**CHAPTER 1**

**THE EARLY PEOPLE OF EAST AFRICAN COASTBEFORE 1000AD**

1. It’s not very clear who the first people to live at the East African coast were.
2. There is a wide belief that the first people to live at the East African coast were Hunters and Food gatherers.
3. The Europeans called them Bushmen and Hottentots.
4. Modern Historians refer to them as the San and Khoi Khoi.
5. The San and the Khoi Khoi are believed to have lived in East Africa in areas of Kenya and southern Tanganyika.
6. They were displaced by stronger and more organised migrants; the Bantu and Cushites.
7. The Bantu came from central and west Africa as early as 500AD.
8. On their arrival at the coast, they settled at Mombasa, Kilwa, Sofala and Malindi.
9. They took up farming along the East African coast.
10. The Cushites on the other hand came from either North or North East especially from Ethiopia.
11. The Cushites were comprised of the Galla and the Somalis.
12. At the East African coast, they settled to the North and took up animal rearing.
13. They were then divided into Northern and Southern Cushites.
14. The earliest groups were joined by the Arabs and Persians around the 7th century.

**WAY OF LIFE AT THE EAST AFRICAN COAST BEFORE THE COMING OF THE ARABS**

**(BY 1000AD)**

1. By 1000AD, the East African Coast had three groups of people namely: The Bushmen, Bantu and Cushites.
2. They were organised politically, socially and economically.
3. **Politically** the settlements were independent with independent leaders, for example the Bantu had chiefs.
4. The coastal settlements also had their armies though small.
5. The small settlements were not centralized.
6. They were organised based on clans and their leaders were therefore clan heads.
7. **Economically** the Bantu were cultivators, who grew crops like millet and bananas.
8. The early coastal settlers also carried out fishing.
9. Wild animals were also hunted by the coastal people for their meat.
10. They carried out trade on a small scale, where foodstuffs were exchanged for iron tools like hoes from neighbours.
11. Iron working was important too. Hoes for cultivation were made while spears and arrow heads were made for defense purposes.
12. The Cushites were animal keepers. They reared cattle, goats and sheep.
13. The coastal inhabitants also mined gold to exchange with neighbours.
14. **Socially** the Bantu at the coast lived in settled communities.
15. The Bantu built small huts.
16. Bushmen lived in caves and under big tress.
17. The Bushmen were mobile who moved from one place to another.
18. The coastal inhabitants worshipped small gods.
19. They believed in life after death.
20. Some of the early inhabitants were cannibals. They lived on human flesh since some of them had sharp teeth.

**Revision questions**

1. Who were the earliest people at the East African coast?
2. Describe their way of life at the East African coast by 1000AD.

**CHAPTER 2**

**THE HISTORY OF THE COAST EAST AFRICA (1000- 1500 A.D)**

**ORGANIZATION OF THE EAST AFRICAN COAST BETWEEN 1000AD AND 1500AD**

1. Between 1000 and1500 A.D the East African Coast was made up of 37 towns that included: Mombasa, Kilwa, Malindi, Sofala, pate, Mogadishu, Lamu, Mafia, Kismayu, Pemba and many others.
2. **Politically** the towns were ruled by Arabs who were known as Sultans or Sheikhs.
3. The Sultans were assisted by a small council of officials and these did specific tasks.
4. Among the above officials were the khadis, Amirs, Memsahib and others.
5. The laws were chiefly based on Islamic laws/Sharia laws where the Quran was highly used.
6. Some of these settlements were highly organised kingdoms with a ruling class, for example Malindi.
7. Some towns were controlled by the Africans, for example Pate.
8. Most of the towns were built on islands or peninsular for easy defence purposes, for example, Zanzibar, Pemba, Malindi, Mafia and others.
9. Some Towns had fences for protection against their enemies
10. Some African settlements had their own chiefs who formed the basis of power.
11. Towns had small armies for protection.
12. However, communities like the Cushites had no centralised authority and therefore they were led by clan heads.
13. **Economically** the Africans participated in trade with the Arabs, Persians and Indians, for example the Indian Ocean Trade.
14. Goods were exchanged for others, that is to say barter Trade.
15. Fishing was also important to the people especially near the Indian Ocean.
16. Livestock, that is to say the keeping of animals was also being done.
17. Some towns minted their own coins, for example, Kilwa, Mombasa, Sofala and others and this eased trade.
18. Some Industries like pottery, cloth weaving and others also existed around Mombasa.
19. The Coastal towns practiced agriculture, that is to say they grew bananas, vegetables, fruits, coconuts and so on.
20. Iron working was also important, that is to say hoes, spears, and arrows were made.
21. **Socially** two groups of people lived at the coast of East Africa, that is to say those who already lived there or came from inland and those who came from places across the ocean or sea.
22. The first group which made up the African population of the coastal region came either from the North West or the south.
23. The groups of people that lived along the East African coast included Bantu, the Cushites, Arabs and others.
24. Islam was the dominant religion where the Muslims believed in messenger ship of Muhammad and oneness of God.
25. Arabic was the official language used.
26. The coastal Societies were divided into classes, like slaves, traders and leaders.
27. Mosques were important social and religious centres.
28. In terms of dressing men put on Kanzus while women put on veils
29. Sheikhs were important socially, they were concerned with imparting good morals in Societies.
30. Intermarriages were very common and they led to a new race of people called Swahili and a language called Kiswahili.
31. A new language called Kiswahili emerged and was widely spoken among the coastal towns.
32. Building of flat topped nature was common among the coastal settlements.

**THE LAND OF AZANIA**

1. Different visitors described the East African coast differently.
2. Others called it Azania. Azania is a Greek word referring to the East African coast between 1000— 1500 A.D.
3. Azania to the Greeks meant the “Land of Blacks”
4. Arabs and Persians called it “Zenji”
5. Azania was the coastland of Blacks running from Mogadishu up to cape Delgado.
6. This stretch known as Azania is approximately 3000 kilometers long.
7. By 1500 A.D, this coast had prominent towns such as pate, Lamu Zanzibar
8. It also included Gedi, Kismayu, Sofia, Kilwa, Oja, mafia, Mombasa, Malindi and others.
9. Later, the land of Azania was referred to as the “Zanji Empire”
10. Azania was originally inhabited by Bushmen, Bantu and Cushites.
11. Latter, Arabs, Persians Indonesians Egyptians, Indians also came and occupied it.
12. It was from the word “Zanj” that the word Zanzibar came. It is up to date a very important area.
13. The Suffix “Bar”, that is to say, the last phrase simply means coast line.

**GROWTH AND EXPANSION OF THE LEADING COASTAL TOWNS AND SETTLEMENTS**

There were 37 old towns along the East African coast; all of them grew rich as a result of participating in the Indian Ocean Trade which reached its height in the 15th century. The major ones were: Mombasa, Kilwa, Malindi, Mogadishu and Zanzibar

a) **Mombasa**

1. Mombasa was among the chief towns at the coast of East Africa.
2. It was located along the coast of present day Kenya.
3. It was established by the Shiraz rulers in the l2the century.
4. It was founded as an export centre for Ivory and slaves, but it remained a small settlement until the second half of the 15th Century.
5. On arrival, these Shiraz, that is say Arabs found the Bantu and Cushites living in Mombasa and then they set up their rule over the African people.
6. Mombasa had good natural harbours which could handle several ships.
7. Mombasa as a town, used to carry out attacks frequently on its neighbours like Kilwa.
8. Mombasa was created as an export centre for slaves and ivory to the other parts of the world.
9. It is believed that by around 1000 A.D. Mombasa was still a small town when compared to other towns like Kilwa and Mogadishu.
10. Indeed Mombasa remained small not until the second half of the15th Century when it started seriously expanding.
11. By the 1 6th century ,Mombasa had greatly developed into a wonderful city, a fact that was a result of good natural harbours, a good location, trading activities and so on.
12. Mombasa’s development brought her into conflict with other coastal towns like Malindi which caused constant fighting.
13. Mombasa greatly involved in Indian Ocean trade which enabled her to grow into a prosperous “city state.”
14. By 1590, Mombasa had grown into a very beautiful city with wonderful buildings that even attracted foreigners and Tourists.
15. Mombasa will be remembered in the history of East Africa as the town that staged the greatest resistance to the Portuguese conquerors; finally it lost its independence to the Portuguese.
16. Its rulers were Swahili and its culture had a strong African element
17. By 1490, Mombasa was able to challenge the power of Kilwa town.

**(b) Mogadishu**

1. It was founded on the coast of Modern Somalia between the 10th and 15th centuries.
2. Between the 10th and 15th Centuries, Mogadishu on the Somaliland Coast was second in Importance only to Kilwa.
3. The main difference between the towns was that Mogadishu was the most influential centre of Islamic culture.
4. By AD. 1000, it was an important town in the Muslim world and by the 15th century had become the most developed coastal settlement
5. At first, the town was occupied by the Bantu and Cushites.
6. By 1400, Mogadishu started receiving great numbers of Arabs whose main aim of coming to the area was trading
7. It was ruled by a council of strong Swahili traders and leaders who carried out developmental activities like building roads, Quranic schools, and mosques and so on.
8. Mogadishu grew rich from Sofala gold trade.
9. Mogadishu by 1450 had become the most influential centre of Islamic culture along the East African coast.
10. Although Mogadishu retained its local languages and other customs, there was serious Islamisation in the area. Mogadishu had strong trading links with Arabs who brought imports like iron, food crops, and beads and so on.
11. Mogadishu became the leading centre of slave trade.
12. Mogadishu minted its own coins
13. Mogadishu had elaborate architecture that is to say mosques, Quranic schools built in Arab- Persian style.
14. Like any other coastal town, poor Mogadishu became a victim of Portuguese conquest in 1498.

**(c)Kilwa**

1. It is not very clear as to when Kilwa was established, but never the less, the town of Kilwa by 1400 had emerged to greatness.
2. Kilwa town was located around the Tanzania coastline.
3. Kilwa was established by the Shiraz rulers.
4. The Shiraz rulers came from the Banadir coast.
5. Ali-Bin Al Hassan transformed Kilwa into a strong fortress Island.
6. Through raids, Kilwa was able to bring several neighbouring coastal states under her control. That is to say as far as Pemba.
7. Kilwa gained control over the gold trade from the interior of East Africa; this enabled her to mint her own coins.
8. Until about 1350, Kilwa’s only commercial rival was Mogadishu.
9. Al Hassan Bin Suleiman began construction work of great mosques; Quranic schools.
10. Sulaiman like his successor, Suleiman I carried out the famous conquest of Mafia.
11. Just like other coastal towns Kilwa had very strong Islamic influence in terms of culture, religion and administration.
12. Kilwa had very dedicated Moslems who spread Islam into several parts of the interior of E. Africa.
13. Kilwa never only had dedicated Moslems but also it became the centre of Islamic learning by 1270A.D.
14. Kilwa’s greatness was heavily checked, by rivals like Sofala and Mogadishu.

**(d) Malindi**

1. Malindi was founded on the coast of current Kenya by around 1300.
2. But like other coastal towns, the town gained riches as an important trade centre of especially slaves, beads and iron implements.
3. Malindi was founded at almost the same time as the town of Mombasa.
4. The two towns, that is say to Mombasa and Malindi were close together and so they were fierce rivals.
5. Like most other towns on the mainland, Malindi had African rulers, then later Swahili rulers after accepting Islam and the leaders took the title of the Sultan.
6. Malindi depended on trade and it became an important place for the Asian dhows.
7. Malindi was smaller than Mombasa in terms of size and trade.
8. It sought alliance with Kilwa against the mighty Mombasa.
9. Due to the great rivalry that existed between Malindi and Mombasa, Malindi even supported the Portuguese against Mombasa.

**(e) Zanzibar**

1. Originally Zanzibar was a very small fishing village; it was an area of black people.
2. It is believed to have registered Islamic influence before any other coastal town.
3. Some historians believe that the earliest known trading post ,Qanbalu, was on Pemba Island.
4. When the Arabs and Persians came in the area, they intermarried with the indigenous people which resulted into Swahili culture.
5. Zanzibar was famous for its clove growing and coconut growing.
6. Zanzibar town involved in Indian Ocean trade when she supplied slaves, ivory, cloves and so on.
7. She became an international slave market.
8. By 1500 Zanzibar was one of the richest coastal towns; it also minted its coins.

**FACTORS THAT LED TO THE DEVELOPMENT OF THE EAST AFRICAN COASTAL TOWNS AND SETTLEMENTS BETWEEN 1000 AND 1500 AD**

1. These coastal towns included: Malindi, Mombasa, Kilwa, Zanzibar, Mogadishu and many others.

The factors for their growth and development were many and they included:

1. Trade, that is to say the Indian Ocean trade which gave them wealth that they used to develop coastal towns.
2. Arrival of foreigners, for example the Arabs, Persian, Indonesians, Indians and so on who came with capital which was used for development.
3. Growth of population along the East African coast that provided market, security and labour.
4. Fertile soils along the East African coast that favoured agriculture as an economic activity
5. Presence of monsoon winds that enabled movement of dhows to the area thus enabling the area to be good for trade.
6. Presence of good natural harbours that helped in anchoring of ships from different areas of the world.
7. Availability of trade items like ivory, gold and slaves with in the area that enabled trading activities in the region.
8. Role of Islam that acted as a unifying factor among the coastal people, it was this unity that enabled development.
9. The use of Sharia law that brought law and order in the region enabled development.
10. Strategic location of these several coastal towns, for example Zanzibar was located on an Island hence easy to defence.
11. Presence of Swahili language for easy communication around the coastal towns aided development.
12. Introduction of Arabic algebra, writing and general education that aided trade.
13. Cheap labour along the East African coast reduced costs of labour hence more profits that were used for development.
14. Good climatic conditions that enabled human settlement and agriculture, greatly assisted in development.
15. Role of Banyans in some towns who were money lenders assisted economic activities.
16. Fertile soils along the East African coast facilitated agriculture hence a stable food supply.
17. Good leadership, with in several coastal towns led to easy and meaningful decisions which led to development
18. Introduction of monetary economy which started by the minting of coins as early as 1200A.D.
19. Bantu communities at the coast provided the badly needed iron tools for agriculture and defence purposes.
20. Through taxation of foreigners the coastal towns got a lot of wealth that was used for development.
21. Acquisition of the gun that enabled expansion of towns and even providing law and order. And with this law and order development was possible.

**FACTORS FOR THE COLLAPSE OF THE COASTAL TOWNS AND SETTLEMENS BY THE**

**16TH CENTURY OR REASONS FOR THE DECLINE OF THE COASTAL TOWNS AND SETTLEMENTS**

1. The reasons for this collapse were economic, political, accidental, and intentional in nature.
2. Disunity of the coastal states which undermined African prosperity and peace as the case was for Mombasa and Kilwa.
3. Rivalry that existed between the coastal towns because of need to control. Many coastal towns wished others badly. They even supported foreigners against each other to take control.
4. Out break of civil wars that broke out within several towns along the coast of East Africa led to their collapse.
5. Role of famine that made the population along the coastal towns suffer affected their morale hence leading to their collapse.
6. Activities of slave trade that made coastal towns too restless and uneasy due to constant raids for slaves. Young energetic people who could have fought for the survival of the coastal towns were taken into slavery.
7. Role of man eaters, that is to say it’s believed that the Zimbas and Segujas who were man eaters invaded the coast which led to its decline.
8. Trading items like agricultural products became scarce due to slave trade, and this weakened the coastal towns.
9. Constant wars among the coastal towns, for example between Mombasa and Malindi that drained the wealth of the coastal towns.
10. Coming of the Portuguese to the coast of East Africa led to the decline of the coastal towns. The Portuguese carried out serious exploitation that caused the downfall of coastal towns.
11. They also highly taxed the coastal people which led to poverty.
12. Portuguese resorted to looting the riches of the coastal towns hence leading to their collapse.
13. Portuguese out competed and even chased away the Arabs who had developed the coastal towns.
14. The Portuguese ruthlessly burnt down several towns into ashes, for example Kilwa that had tried to resist.
15. Wars that the Portuguese staged against the coastal towns led to serious destruction of property, lives and general insecurity.

**REASONS WHY THE COASTAL TOWNS AND SETTLEMENT LOST THEIR INDEPENDENCE SO EASILY TO THE PORTUGUESE**

1. Disunity of the coastal towns, for example Mombasa fought against Malindi.
2. The Portuguese had superior weapons like the maxium guns among others.
3. They had constant supplies of ammunitions from Portugal
4. They used surprise attacks to weaken the Africans.
5. They would carefully plan for war against the coastal towns.
6. They had prior knowledge about the coast, for example through Vasco-Dagama’s first voyage to the East African Coast; they were able to get all the information about the coast.
7. Africans were weakened by famine due to the earth scorched policy used by the Portuguese.
8. Diseases too weakened coastal cities especially the epidemics.
9. Portuguese were too determined to take over the coast of East Africa.
10. The Portuguese had brutal methods of fighting like scorched earth policy that threatened Arabs and Africans.
11. Influence of Zimbas and Segujas, that is to say man eaters which weakened Africans.
12. The Portuguese had able and courageous commanders.
13. The Portuguese used the policy of divide and rule, for example Malindi against Mombasa.
14. Their soldiers were more trained and experienced in war fare.
15. Africans had already hated the Arabs.
16. The Portuguese often surrounded coastal towns.

**Revision questions**

* 1. Describe the way of life along the East African Coast between 1000 and 1500 A.D.
  2. What was referred to as the Land of Azania?
  3. Who were the inhabitants of Azania by 1 000A.D?
  4. What were the main features of life of the Azania people?
  5. What factors led to the development of the East African Coastal towns between 1000 and 1500 A.D?
  6. Account for the collapse of the coastal towns by the 16th century.
  7. How did the coastal towns develop into centres of wealth
  8. Describe the growth and expansion of the following coastal towns: a) Mombasa b) Kilwa c) Malindi d) Mogadishu e) Zanzibar.

**CHAPTER 3**

**THE ARABS AND PERSIANS AT THE EAST AFRICAN COAST (1000-1500AD)**

**REASONS FOR THE COMING OF THE ARABS AND PERSIANS TO THE EAST AFRICAN COAST (1000-1500AD)**

1. The Arabs and Persians were a group of people from the Arabian Peninsula who came and settled at the East African Coast.
2. The reasons for their coming to the East African coast were social, political and economic in nature.
3. The factors were also internal and external
4. Need to trade, that is to say the Indian Ocean trade where for many centuries goods like ivory and slaves from the coast of East Africa had attracted them.
5. Strategic location of the East African coast. It was open to the Arab world.
6. Fertile soils at the East African coast also attracted them to come and carry out crop cultivation.
7. Good climatic conditions along the East African coast for human settlement and cultivation of crops.
8. Presence of good natural harbours along the East African coast, where their dhows could anchor with ease.
9. Arabs had internal conflicts at home. The discontented groups decided to come to the East African coast to look for peaceful areas for settlement.
10. Need at a latter stage to spread Islam to the coastal people.
11. Political wrangles within the Arabs ruling families, that is to say the Yoruba families against the Busaidi families were in bitter struggle for leadership in Arabia. That made some Arabs to come to the coast to look for other peaceful areas.
12. The role of religious wars back in Arabia, for example they experienced what was termed as “Fitina period” that had several wars, hence the need to escape from such wars made them settle along the coast.
13. Need to dominate others politically so as to create overseas empires on the coast of East Africa.
14. Love for adventure. This was true especially among the young Arabs who had interest to see what lay beyond the Arab world.
15. Monsoon winds that facilitated the movement of their dhows made the Arab coming to the east African coast possible.
16. Availability of precious or highly demanded goods along the East African coast like gold, slaves and ivory that attracted the Arabs.
17. Coastal people were very friendly to the new comers.
18. The fresh waters along the coast of East African must have attracted the Arabs whose land was majorly a desert.
19. Presence of vacant pieces of land along the coast of East Africa.
20. It was partly an era of Islamic conquest and expansion in Arabia and the neighbouring areas.

**EFFECTS OF THE COMING OF THE ARABS AND PERSIANS TO THE EAST AFRICAN COAST**

**(1000-1500AD)**

1. The effects of the Arabs to the people of East African coast were social, economic and political in nature.
2. Others were negative and positive.
3. Islam was spread from the coast into the interior of East Africa.
4. The Arabs took over leadership at the coast of East Africa.
5. Intermarriages that led to emergence of new race of people called Swahili race occurred.
6. New ways of dressing, for example Turbans and Kanzus for men and veils for women were introduced.
7. Arab ways of construction was introduced to the people of East Africa, for example building of flat top roofed houses.
8. Guns were introduced among the East African people that increased warfare.
9. They were actively involved in slave trade that increased insecurity.
10. New towns developed up and old ones too were modernized, for example Kilwa, Mombasa, among others.
11. Quranic schools were constructed at the coast and in the interior.
12. Trading activity increased because Arabs were good traders.
13. They introduced new crops like cloves, rice among others to the people of East Africa.
14. New goods were introduced to the E. African people, for example beads, necklaces and so on.
15. New languages developed, for example Kiswahili which is, even to date, common among the people of East Africa.
16. Arabic language too was introduced among the coastal people.
17. Quranic laws or Sharia laws were introduced in several areas of East Africa.
18. Mosques were constructed in different areas of East Africa, for example a powerful one called Hussuni Kubwa built by Al Hassan Bin Suleiman at Kilwa in 1270 A.D.
19. People’s moral Standards were tremendously improved due to the strict Islamic code that was adopted by several East African people.
20. Islamic learning increased as Quranic schools were constructed in several areas of East Africa.
21. Islamic brotherhood was spread in different areas of East Africa, that is to say togetherness was exemplified by same greeting “Salaam Aleikum” meaning “peace be with you”.
22. Islam and Arabs exposed the East African people to the outside world, especially the Arab world of Persian Gulf, Arabia, Indonesia and others.
23. Islamic practices like prayer, paying alms (Zakkat), fasting of the holy month of Ramadan were adopted by the East African people.

**THE INFLUENCE OF SWAHILI CULTURE AT THE EAST AFRICAN COAST (1000-1500AD)**

1. The Swahili culture developed at the East African coast between 1000AD and 1500AD.
2. It came into existence as a result of intermarriages between the Arabs and the Coastal Bantu.
3. It became the strongest culture in all coastal states.
4. It came as a result of the two communities combining their practices.
5. People with brown colour, long air and tall structure emerged.
6. The language spoken was Kiswahili with a mixture of words from Arabic and Bantu words.
7. The Swahili culture was full majorly of Moslem faith.
8. There were many Mosques built for worship of Allah whom they highly believed in.
9. They used Arab style of building where houses were built of stones and with flat roofs.
10. Gold and silver were used to decorate their houses.
11. The Swahili people dressed in silk and cotton clothes.
12. They wore copper and gold bangles.
13. Laws and justices were based on Koran.
14. They had social classes like rulers, traders, religious leaders and other workers.
15. They kept animals like cattle, goats, sheep, and poultry.
16. The Swahili people carried out fishing.
17. They also grew vegetables, fruits, millet, and rice among other crops.
18. Their staple food crops were rice and spices.
19. The Swahili people planted large farms of banana and coconuts.

**REASONS WHY THE ARABS AND PERSIANS WERE NOT INTERESTED IN THE INTERIOR OF EAST AFRICA BEFORE 1840**

1. The reasons were social, economic and political in nature.
2. Poor transport to the interior before 1840s discourage the Arabs and Persians from penetrating into the interior.
3. The Arabs were at first few in number and there was enough land at the coast for settlement. They did not have any pressure for land at the beginning of their settlement at the coast.
4. Most Arabs had come as refugees hence never had an ambition to go into the interior.
5. Hostile communities in the interior, for example Masai warriors discouraged the Arabs and Persians from entering inland.
6. Fear of man eaters in the interior at Tsavo areas was yet another reason that made the Arabs not to be interested in penetrating inland.
7. Danger of tropical diseases in the interior also discouraged the Arabs from entering the interior of East Africa.
8. Internal civil wars among the communities in the interior of East Africa discouraged the Arabs.
9. Lack of geographical knowledge about the interior also discouraged them from entering inland.
10. The good cool and conducive climate at the coast forced them to stay at the coast of East Africa.
11. Seyyid Said had not yet shifted his capital from Oman to Zanzibar and information about the interior was still very scanty.
12. They had not come to majorly spread Islam which would call for immediate penetration into the interior.
13. At first, they never had serious competition in trade at the coast of East Africa.
14. Presence of middlemen who gave Arabs whatever they had wanted from the interior.
15. They were not assisted by their home government to move further into the interior to look for settlement.
16. General ignorance of Arabs about the interior could not make them look for settlement beyond the East African coast.
17. Language barrier at first could not make the Arabs and Persians penetrate into the interior of East Africa.
18. They had not yet been welcomed by Africans into the interior of East Africa. They therefore concentrated at the coast of East Africa where they were highly welcomed.

**WHY THE ARABS EVENTUALLY BECAME INTERESTED IN THE INTERIOR OF EAST AFRICA AFTER 1840**

1. They were attracted by presence of more trade opportunities in the interior of East Africa.
2. There was Need to spread Islam in the interior as time went on.
3. The need to get rid of middlemen like Nyamwezi who were expensive to Arabs still forced them inland.
4. Some Arabs traders like Tipu-Tip had settled into the interior. This encouraged others penetrate inland.
5. Transport had been improved tremendously into the interior and the Arabs found it very easy to penetrate inland.
6. Population increase of Arabs at the coast forced them to go into the interior to look for areas for settlement.
7. African leaders invited them, for example in Buganda Kingdom, Kabaka Sunna I welcomed Ahmed Bin Ibrahim to his Kingdom.
8. Security was later guaranteed by the interior tribes and this made the Arabs to penetrate inland.
9. Transfer of Seyyid Said’s capital from Oman to Zanzibar boosted their morale to go to the interior.
10. The coming of other people like missionaries at the coast forced Arabs into the interior.
11. Need by Arabs to establish military bases into the interior were yet another reason for the Arab inland.
12. Serious competition in trade from other foreigners at the coast forced some Arabs inland.
13. Penetration of Swahili and Arabic language into the interior, this ended language barrier in the interior.
14. The Arabs and Persians penetrated inland because of love for Adventure that is to say to know what was happening in the interior.
15. Discovery of medicines to cure tropical diseases that had been a big threat to the foreigners also gave them the opportunity to move inland.

**EFFECTS OF THE PENETRATION OF THE ARABS INTO THE INTERIOR OF EAST AFRICA AFTER 1840**

1. The effects of the entry of the Arabs into the interior of East Africa were both Positive and negative.
2. They established permanent settlement into the interior of east Africa in places like Tabora, Ujiji, and Bagamoyo among others.
3. The settlements which the Arabs established later became trading centres because they were also using them as collection centres for commodities.
4. Zanzibar became an entry port for trade locally and internationally.
5. There were intermarriages between the Arabs and interior tribes. This led to production of new people called Afro-Arabs.
6. Empires like Nyamwezi of Mirambo and Unyanyembe of Nyungu Yamawe were as a result of Arabs’ entry inland. They interacted in trade and wealth was generated by the leaders.
7. Cowrie shells and coins were introduced inland to generate trade which led to the development of the interior.
8. As the Arabs penetrated inland raiding for slaves increased. The Arabs demanded for many slaves.
9. In addition as more slaves were raided, small states disappeared because raids were directed towards them.
10. Increased slave raids led to a lot of sufferings and misery among the East Africans.
11. Kiswahili language which had developed at the coast later was introduced into the interior of East Africa. Trading activities were therefore made easy.
12. Arabic language and customs were also extended inland, for example, dressing and eating habits.
13. It also led to widespread of Islam. The Arab traders spread Islam as they traded.
14. Their penetration inland also attracted the colonialists and the missionaries to challenge their activities.
15. The Arabs who penetrated inland not only raided for slaves but also hunted down elephants which later led to their depletion.
16. The African traders also became very wealthy as they traded with the Arabs who had entered inland, for example the Yao, Kamba, Baganda, Nyamwezi and others.
17. The Arab entry inland also led to the introduction of more goods from the Arab world into the interior, for example beads, cloth, mirrors, guns, glasses metal ware among others.
18. There was also introduction of new crops from Arab world. Crops like rice, maize, wheat and cloves were introduced into the interior by the Arabs.
19. Plantations of cloves were then opened into the interior. There was therefore economic prosperity.

**Revision questions**

1. Why did the Arabs and Persians settle at the East African coast between 1000 and1500 A.D?
2. Why were the Arabs not interested in the interior of East Africa before 1840?
3. What were the effects of Arab entry inland upon the interior people?
4. Why did they eventually become interested?
5. What were the effects of the coming of the Arabs up on the coastal people of East Africa?
6. Describe the growth and development of Swahili culture before 1500AD

**CHAPTER 4**

**THE INDIAN OCEAN TRADE OR TRADE ALONG THE EAST AFRICAN COAST (1000-1500AD)**

**ORGANIZATION OF THE INDIAN OCEAN TRADE (1000-1500AD)**

1. This was trade that was carried out along the East African Coast, that is to say it was between the East Africa People, traders from the Far East Arabia and Europeans.
2. The trade was in, around and across the Indian Ocean.
3. The trade was between East Africa people and traders from Far East Arabia and Persia though even Europeans participated.
4. The trade also passed through the Red Sea and the Mediterranean Sea.
5. The trade was based on the prevailing monsoon winds which blew the dhows Southwards towards East Africa between November and April and back to Arabia between May and October.
6. Participants from East Africa included Yao, Nyamwezi, Buganda, Swahili and others.
7. Participants from other countries included Arabs, Persians, Chinese, Indians, Malaysians and others.
8. Major market centres included Mombasa, Mogadishu, Kilwa, Malindi, and Zanzibar among others.
9. Main imports from the Far East included silk, Bowls, guns, cowrie shells, clothes, Swords, beads and many others.
10. Exports from East Africa included ivory, slaves, gold, copper, iron, animal skins and many others.
11. Head porterage was very important. The traders carried commodities on their heads since means of transport was not available.
12. From the interior, goods reached the coast through middle men like Nyamwezi, Yao and others.
13. Barter trade was the major medium of exchange, that is to say goods were exchange for goods.
14. Later cowrie shells were used for buying and selling because barter trade was found to be disadvantageous to some traders.
15. But some towns minted their own coins that they used, for example Mombasa, Kilwa and others.
16. The trade was conducted by powerful Arab families like Busaidi and Mazrui.
17. The dhows were the most common sailing vessels in Indian Ocean trade.
18. African chiefs played a major role in organising Indian Ocean trade.
19. Arabs never traveled into the interior for fear of hostile tribes.
20. Ivory was mainly taken to China from where it was used to make women bangles and ornaments.
21. Important exports like copper and gold came from the interior, for example gold came from the Kingdom of Mwenomotapa.

**EFFECTS OF THE INDIAN OCEAN TRADE UPON THE PEOPLE OF EAST AFRICA**

1. The effects of Indian Ocean Trade were social, economic and political in nature. They were also positive and negative in nature.
2. There was the growth of towns like Malindi, Kilwa, Mombasa and many others.
3. Islamic culture was like dressing, eating habits and others were adopted.
4. Arabic architecture was also adopted, for example building using stones.
5. It also led to introduction of Islam in East Africa.
6. Those who participated in the trade became wealthy, for example the Nyamwezi.
7. East Africa came into contact with the outside world through this trade. There was international recognition of East Africa.
8. It promoted slave trade within several parts of East Africa which led to insecurity.
9. New crops were introduced like rice, Barley, mangoes, cloves, guavas.
10. New methods of eating food of Arabs and Persian origin were introduced, for example using spoons and forks.
11. There was increase in the population of East Africa especially at the coast.
12. Sharia law became the basis of power and administration at the east African coast.
13. The trade encouraged permanent Arab settlement at the coast.
14. Sultans became leaders of the coastal settlements hence loss of independence.
15. It promoted rivalry and conflicts between towns like Malindi and Mombasa over the trade control
16. There was emergence of small-scale industries like minting of coins at Kilwa.
17. The trade benefited several Kingdoms and chiefs. Kingdoms expanded after acquiring wealth from the trade. Chiefs also became wealthy from the trade.
18. New commodities were introduced at the coast and in the interior of East Africa, for example cups, clothes, guns and others.
19. Quranic schools were constructed by the Arabs who participated in the trade.
20. Inter marriages between Africans and Arabs took place. This led to the emergence of Swahili people, language and culture.
21. At first the Africans left or abandoned farming, fishing and concentrated on trade. Famine therefore resulted.
22. The trade attracted the Europeans, especially from Portugal, who later came and conquered the people of East African coast.

**Revision questions**

* + 1. Describe the organization of the Indian Ocean trade.
    2. What were the effects of the Indian Ocean trade to the people of East Africa?
    3. Describe the trade on the East African Coast before A.D 1500.
    4. What were its results?
    5. Describe the trading activities between East Africa and Asia up to 1500 A.D.
    6. How were the coastal people affected by this trade

**CHAPTER 5**

**THE PORTUGUESE RULE AT THE EASTAFRICAN COAST**

**(1500 -1700A.D)**

**REASONS FOR THE PORTUGUESE SETTLEMENT AT THE COAST OF EAST AFRICA (1500-1700AD)**

1. The Portuguese were the first Europeans to come to the East African Coast. They came from Portugal.

The Portuguese came to the east African coast due to the following reasons:

1. Desire to control the Lucrative and profitable Indian Ocean trade along the coast.
2. Need to revenge on Muslims who had earlier occupied their land of Iberian peninsular.
3. They were looking for their Legendary Christian King, John prester because they hoped that be would help them to convert the Eastern World to Christianity.
4. The need to spread Christianity to the East and revenge themselves on the Muslim world for the earlier occupation of Spain and Portugal.
5. The need to find a sea route to India where they wanted to establish a commercial empire.
6. Strategic location of the coast, that is to say controlling the coast would prevent the Egyptians or Turkish forces from obtaining help from region.
7. Need to prevent Egyptians and Turks from obtaining military and economic   
   assistance.
8. Love for adventure. To know what was happening in the outside world especially among the young Portuguese.
9. Need to prevent other European powers from participating in the Indian Ocean trade
10. The good natural harbours at the coast with presence of deep waters at the coast of East Africa attracted the Portuguese. They found it easier for their ship to anchor at the coast.
11. Good cool coastal climate suitable for human settlement also attracted the Portuguese to the East African coast.
12. Presence of fresh waters for domestic purposes was yet another factor that attracted them to the coast.
13. Fertile soils at the coast. They were wonderful for agriculture.
14. Need to use the coast as a military base incase of any attack by the enemy forces.
15. Need to establish a trading empire around the East African coast.
16. By controlling the coast, the Portuguese hoped to get hold of the trade in gold, ivory and spices.
17. They hoped that the coastal people would easily embrace Christianity and forsake Islam which had been spread by Arabs.
18. Europe had witnessed the period of Renaissance among which there was the discovery of better transport means.
19. Hospitality of the coastal people of East Africa attracted them. The coastal people were generally attracted to foreigners.
20. The need to dominate the area politically to enhance prestige at home.

**PORTUGUESE CONQUEST OF THE COAST OF EAST AFRICA**

**OR**

**STEPS TAKEN TO BRING THE EAST AFRICAN COAST UNDER THE PORTUGUESE CONTROL**

1. They used force to bring the East African coast under their control.
2. They used diplomacy in some cases.
3. The events that led to the conquest of East Africa by the Portuguese took a long period of time.
4. In 1494, Portugal and Spain signed the treaty of Tordesillas which gave Portugal the right over land in East Africa.
5. Vasco- Dagama first came to the coast of East Africa in 1498. When be went back he advocated for the conquest of the coast due to its strategic position.
6. Vasco- Dagama still in 1489 when he went back to Portugal, he made reports to the king of Portugal, emphasizing the riches of the East African coast.
7. Immediately after Vasco- Dagama’s persuasive reports, regular voyages organised by Portugal to the East African coast were made.
8. In 1500, Pedro Alvares tried to capture the gold trade in Sofala but failed.
9. In 1502*,* Vasco - Dagama returned to the East African coast with a highly armed fleet of 19 ships. With this army, he captured Kilwa due to its riches in gold.
10. The Sultan who had been the leader of Kilwa was imprisoned and released on condition that he accepted Portuguese rule.
11. In 1503*,* Laurenco Ravasco forced the Islands of Mafia and Zanzibar to accept Portuguese rule and to pay tribute to Portugal.
12. Laurenco Ravasco also forced the smal1 towns like Fate to accept the over lordship of the King of Portugal.
13. In 1505 Francisco De Almelda on his way to India, made a stop over at the coast and he was able to attack three towns of Sofala, Kilwa and Mombasa which he successfully brought under Portuguese control.
14. After Almeida’s remarkable conquest of the three towns, he continued with his journey to India.
15. In 1505 - 1507, another Portuguese commander Trias De- quenas captured small towns of Brava, Oja, Lamu, Kisimayu and others.
16. Some coastal towns like Malindi Simply gave way. They co-operated with the Portuguese and as a reward, they were not to pay tribute to Portugal.
17. In 1509, the coastline between Kilwa to Safala was put under Portuguese rule.
18. By the period 1510, the whole East African coast had been taken over by the Portuguese.
19. For effective rule, the coastal headquarters were set up at Goa under a viceroy.

**REASONS WHY THE COASTAL PEOPLE AND STATES LOST THEIR CONTROL EASILY TO THE PORTUGUESE INVADERS**

1. The reasons why the Portuguese defeated the Arabs and the Africans at the East Africa coast were social, economic and political in nature.
2. The Portuguese were militarily superior compared to the East African coastal people.
3. The Portuguese bad abundant information about the Arabs, coastal conditions. All the information was provided to the Portuguese through Vasco Dagama’s visit.
4. The Portuguese used surprise attacks. The coastal people were found unaware.
5. The Portuguese soldiers were better trained in comparison to the forces of the coastal Arabs.
6. The people and states at the coast were too disunited. A case in point was Malindi and Mombasa that could never join their armies to fight a common enemy due to their long time hatred of one another.
7. The coastal towns had poor economies that were not able to offer finances to fight against the Portuguese.
8. The Arabs had been hated in some cases by Africans; this made such Africans to easily give way to the Portuguese against the Arabs.
9. Use of very harsh methods in fighting against the coastal towns. They used the scotch earthed policy where all crops, roads; animals were destroyed in the raids to weaken the coastal people.
10. Over-determination of the Portuguese to take over the coastal towns. This brought more confidence to the Portuguese hence defeat.
11. The Portuguese got re-enforcements from their home government where as the poor Arabs lacked such re-enforcements like food and money hence their defeat.
12. Poor coastal people had already been weakened by diseases and famine, this reduced their ability to resist the Portuguese.
13. Use of divide and rule policy by the Portuguese, that is to say the Portuguese used the alliance (friendship) of Africans against fellow Africans.
14. Constant attacks from Zimbas and the Segujas must have given a big problem to the Africans and Arabs at the coast hence they were easily defeated by the Portuguese.
15. No European power dared to compete with and rival the Portuguese. This gave the Portuguese no serious opponents hence they easily defeated the Arabs.
16. The Portuguese soldiers were experienced and skilled in warfare which was not the case with the Arabs hence their defeat

**REASONS WHY THE PORTUGUESE WERE ABLE TO CONTROL THE EAST AFRICAN COAST FOR OVER 2000 YEARS**

1. The Portuguese employed a number of methods to maintain their control and grip on the coast. These were social, economic and political in nature.
2. They used divide and rule policy that weakened Africans administration.
3. They built 45 Garrisons (military bases) at Mozambique and Sofala. These were meant to be used by the Portuguese to defend themselves from other coastal invaders.
4. Through building Fort Jesus in 1453where military hard wares were kept to control rebellion.
5. They imposed high taxes which provided them with revenue to finance their administration.
6. They employed highly trained commanders.
7. They also exploited the disunity of coastal towns to their advantage.
8. The Portuguese received financial aid from their home governments.
9. They exploited the military weakness of the coastal people.
10. Africans had been weakened by frequent external attacks from man eaters.
11. Africans were economically and financially weak. They could not manage to meet the coast of war with the Portuguese because they did not have enough money.
12. The Portuguese were skilled in naval warfare compared to the coastal people.

**CHALLENGES FACED BY THE PORTUGUESE IN THEIR ADMINISTRATION OF THE EAST AFRICAN COAST**

1. The challenges or problems that were faced by the Portuguese in their administration were political, social and economic in nature.
2. Some were internal from within East Africa.
3. Others were external from Portugal and Spain.
4. Constant rebellions from their subjects weakened them.
5. Portuguese administrators were few in number and not enough to administer the coast.
6. Many of the Portuguese officials were corrupt and inefficient. They did not administer the coast with effectiveness.
7. Large distance between the coast and Portugal which slowed support from their home government.
8. Financial crisis was a big blow to the Portuguese administrators. As time went on the became financially unstable.
9. The coast was too big to be well administered hence this encouraged rebellions.
10. Racial segregation and religious conflicts at the coast made administration very hard.
11. Portuguese lost friendly coastal towns like Malindi and when this happened, they could not withstand the pressure from the coastal Arabs.
12. They experienced challenges from the Dutch and British at a later stage. They were also struggling to control the coast because they had discovered that it was very profitable.
13. There was also the effect of man eaters like the Zimbas and the Segujas.
14. The Portuguese administrators were so arrogant and brutal and this made Portuguese administration to be hated by the coastal people.
15. Effects of tropical diseases which killed most of the Portuguese officials.
16. Continuous assistance of the coastal people by the Arabs from the Arab world.
17. Increased sea pirates especially from the Turks, also destabilized them at the coast.
18. The fall of Fort Jesus to the Arabs. This was the Portuguese strong military base.
19. Decline in trade between the coast and the Far East.
20. Internal conflicts at the East African coast undermined the Portuguese leadership.

**REASONS FOR DECLINE OF THE PORTUGUESE ADMINISTRATION AT THE EAST AFRICAN COAST**

1. They were few in numbers for effective administration.
2. Portugal was far away to re- enforce military and financial assistance during   
   revolts.
3. The union of Spain and Portugal weakened their control. Spain concentrated on her home affairs and neglected oversea issues.
4. Corrupt officials who were rejected. They wished to make a lot of money in anyway possible to help their people back home.
5. Decline in trade that was used as a source of revenue was also a very big blow to the Portuguese.
6. Wide spread poverty among the subjects also failed them. They could not pay taxes to the Portuguese administration.
7. The Portuguese policy of separation whereby they lived apart from the ruled people made Africans too annoyed.
8. There were frequent rebellions at the coast, for example the one in Mombasa could not keep the Portuguese at peace.
9. The Portuguese suffered from tropical diseases that killed them and reduced their manpower.
10. Rivalry with Arabs who used to assist the coastal people to rebel was yet another reason for the Portuguese loss of their coastal empire.
11. Portuguese arrogance at the coast which caused isolation and thus leading to frequent rebellions.
12. The Dutch and British rivalry, against the Portuguese to control trade. From about 1850, the English merchants started challenging the Portuguese position around the coast.
13. Bad treatment of the subject people made the Portuguese lose the support of the once friendly towns like Malindi.
14. From l652*,* the Oman Arabs greatly assisted the East African coast towns to resist Portuguese rule.
15. Frequent attacks from man eaters like the Zimbas and the Segujas.
16. Portugal was a small and poor country which could not finance an extensive empire.
17. Portugal lacked strong personnel at the East African coast since their administrators were interested in commerce and trade.
18. Arrival of French and British traders in the 16th century weakened their position at the coast.

**STEPS IN THE DECLINE OF THE PORTUGUESE POWER ALONG THE EAST AFRICAN COAST**

1. In 1547; Turkish Ships controlled the Red Sea.
2. In 1569, Turkish pirates started raiding down the coast as far as Malindi.
3. In about 1580, the Dutch and the British began to threaten the Portuguese control at the East African coast.
4. In 1580, Portugal united with Spain and this weakened her power greatly.
5. In 1585 and1586, the coast experienced the first visit by Amir Ali Bey from Oman.
6. In 1587, the Portuguese naval army punished coastal towns for welcoming Ali Bey.
7. In 1589, friendly Sultan Al Hassan bin Ahmed established himself at Mombasa.
8. In 1600, the British East India Company was founded to trade with the East.
9. In 1631, Sultan Yusuf bin Hassan of Mombasa rebelled and slaughtered several Portuguese. The Portuguese lost control of Fort Jesus for a while.
10. In 1652, the Oman Arabs attacked Zanzibar and Pate.
11. In 1660, the Oman Arabs started attacking Mombasa.
12. In 1669, the Oman Arabs attacked the coast almost as far as Mozambique.
13. In 1686, a serious rebellion took place at Pate.
14. In March 1698, the Oman Arabs under Imam Saif bin Sultan began to attack Fort Jesus.
15. In 1698, Fort Jesus was captured by the Arabs.
16. In 1699, the East African Coast as far as south cape Delgado was in the Oman Arab’s hands.

**EFFECTS OR RESULTS OF THE PORTUGUESE RULE AT THE EAST AFRICAN COAST**

1. The Portuguese controlled the East African coast for over 200 years.
2. They were the ones who ended the Arabs monopoly of the Indian Ocean trade.

For the time they spent at the coast, they had many effects which included the following:

1. The effects were social, economic and political in nature
2. They were also both positive and negative effects.
3. Others were both internal and external in nature.
4. Towns were destroyed by the Portuguese, for example Kilwa, Mombasa among others.
5. The Portuguese contributed to the decline in gold, ivory and slave trade at the East African coast.
6. Famine resulted due the to raids by the Portuguese which left the coastal people unsettled for agricultural activities.
7. Heavy taxes were imposed on the coastal people which left them poor.
8. Their policy of divide and rule increased rivalry.
9. Christianity was introduced by the Portuguese which unfortunately failed to capture the interest of several Islamized people.
10. The Portuguese suppression and punishment led to loss of many lives.
11. As people rebelled more suffering was inflicted.
12. The Portuguese added a few words to the Swahili language, for example Meza meaning table, pesa meaning money, ananasi meaning pineapples and others.
13. Portuguese built Fort Jesus in 1593 which acted as a tourist attraction to the region even up to date.
14. They introduced new farming methods, for example they encouraged the use of cow dung as manure.
15. They improved on transport by introducing ships in the region.
16. They brought new food crops like cassava, guavas, paw paws and many others.
17. They also introduced a number of games at the coast, for example bull fighting and playing of cards called “Matatu.”
18. New form of Architecture was also introduced, for example the use of bricks for building.
19. The existence of the E. African coast was made known to the rest of Europe.
20. The Portuguese burnt and destroyed several buildings along the coastal towns.

**Revision questions**

1. Why did the Portuguese settle at the coast of East African coast?
2. How did the Portuguese establish themselves at the coast of East Africa?
3. What steps were taken by the Portuguese to control the east African coast?
4. How were the Portuguese able to control the East African coast for over200 years
5. Why did the Portuguese lose control over their East African coastal state?
6. How did the Portuguese rule at the coast affect the people?
7. Why did the coastal states lose their independence so easily to the Portuguese?
8. Why did the Portuguese lose control of the East African Coast North of River Ruvuma?
9. What were the challenges faced by the Portuguese during their rule?

**CHAPTER 6**

**THE ESTABLISHMENT OF OMAN P0WER (l698 - 1840)   
REASONS FOR THE COMING OF THE OMAN ARABS TO THE EAST AFRICAN COAST**

1. The Oman Arabs were the Arabs who came from Oman and they included Seyyid Said.
2. The East African coastal area had been associated with the people of Oman from the very beginning.
3. Oman Arabs knew that the majority of the coastal people were Moslems and by declaring a holy war “Jihad” on the Portuguese, they would free the people from Portuguese rule.
4. Oman Arabs knew that they would never control the Indian Ocean trade again without the control over East African coast.
5. The East African coast had towns with important riches, for example Kilwa and Sofala had gold.
6. Need to revenge on to the Portuguese who had driven Arabs from the East African coast.
7. The need to take political power so as to be in position to impose taxes on the coastal settlement.
8. Conflicts among the Oman Arabs families; the Yoruba family and Busaidi family conflicts at home forced the Oman Arabs to control the E. African coast.
9. Oman Arabs intended to control the East African coast to ensure that the Portuguese would never take up control over the coast again.
10. The need to benefit from the lucrative Indian Ocean trade.
11. The need to tax the East African peoples to get revenue from them.
12. The E. African coast had wonderful climatic conditions that attracted the Oman Arabs.
13. The East African coast had good natural harbours that attracted the Oman Arabs.
14. The need to spread Islam along the East African coast.
15. The coast was strategically located hence easy to defend from external attacks.
16. Coastal people were friendly and caring. They were generally hospitable and this attracted Oman Arabs.

**REASONS FOR THE CONFLICTS AND STRUGGLES BETWEEN THE OMAN ARABS AND THE MAZRUI FAMILIES**

1. The Mazrui governors were not ready to lose their position as leaders to the Busaidi dynasty.
2. The need and desire to control trade along the East African coast caused the struggles.
3. The failure of the Mazrui governors of Mombasa to respect and fully recognize the Busaidi who had taken over their control over the Ottoman Empire.
4. The Declaration of Mombasa as an independent state under the Mazrui governors from the Oman rule caused power struggles.
5. High taxation over the coastal people by the Oman rulers had made life too difficult.
6. Historically, the Mazrui administrators held a belief that they were the right people destined to administer Mombasa after all the Portuguese had found them the true leaders of such an area.
7. The poor and inefficient administration of the Oman leadership encouraged struggles.
8. Availability of supplies from the “Nyika” which greatly encouraged Mombasa in her efforts to resist the Oman rulers.

**WHY SEYYID SAID TRANSFERRED HIS CAPITAL FROM OMAN TO ZANZIBAR**

1. By the turn of the century, a new man came to power in Oman. This was Seyyid Said.
2. Seyyid Said was born in the 1791 at Muscat the capital of Oman and his father was Sultan Said of the Busaidi ruling dynasty.
3. He was more determined and ruthless in his approach in spite of the several problems he faced.
4. Seyyid Said lost his father at a tender age of only 13 years.
5. By 1817, Seyyid- Said had solved the problem of enemies in Oman and pirates at sea had all been solved with the British assistance. This gave Seyyid Said time to concentrate in East Africa.
6. In 1817, Seyyid-Said sent ships to the coast of East Africa and captured Pate which had been conquered by Mombasa in 1807.
7. In 1840, Seyyid Said moved his capital from Oman to Zanzibar due to several factors:
8. The factors for Seyyid-Said’s shift of his capital from Oman to Zanzibar were geographical, economic, and political in nature.
9. The need to administer the coast more effectively.
10. The need to participate in the Indian Ocean trade and actually to control it by himself.
11. Zanzibar’s climate was very good for human settlement and agriculture.
12. Zanzibar had not only a good harbour but also had a good fresh water supply.
13. Zanzibar was becoming prosperous and rich thus the need to control it. This forced him to transfer his capital from Oman to Zanzibar.
14. The need to get trade items from the interior of East Africa by use of Zanzibar, forced him to transfer his capital.
15. He was escaping from internal wrangles at Oman.
16. Zanzibar was more strategically located on an Island hence easy to defend.
17. Zanzibar had very fertile soils suitable for agriculture than Oman which had very poor soils.
18. The need to completely end the conflicts between the Mazrui and the Oman rulers.
19. The need to control and check Sea piracy that had affected the profitability of the Indian Ocean trade.
20. The need to win glory and prestige. There would be respect accorded to him by Controlling Zanzibar which had developed greatly.
21. At Muscat, there were so many political opponents and enemies in general; the need to escape such people forced him to shift his capital.
22. It is hoped and believed that the people along the East African coast would provide very cheap labour to Seyyid Said’s agricultural and industrial schemes, hence he had to shift to Zanzibar.

**SIGNIFICANCE / IMPACTS / RESULTS */* ACHIEVEMENTS OF SEYYID-SAID IN THE HISTORY OF EAST AFRICA**

Seyyid Said is remembered in the history of East African coast because of many effects which include the following:

1. Seyyid Said shifted his capital from Oman (Muscat) to Zanzibar in 1840.
2. He established clove growing in Zanzibar.
3. Seyyid Said transformed Zanzibar into an important trade centre and slave trade market.
4. He developed and encouraged trade with the other parts of the world.
5. He transformed Zanzibar into an international market recognized by Britain, France, Belgium, and other Europeans.
6. He highly encouraged Europeans to open up trading posts in Zanzibar, consequently, the Germans opened up one of such posts in 1844.
7. He encouraged the Indian Banyans who were money lenders from India to settle along the East African coast. These gave loans to traders.
8. He promoted a cash economy other than barter trade by encouraging the use of Rupees which were Indian currencies.
9. He encouraged trade with different tribes from the interior of E. Africa like the Nyamwezi, Yao and others.
10. Seyyid Said signed commercial treaties with foreign countries like France, German and Britain.
11. He vigorously fought against Sea pirates which improved trade opportunities in the Indian Ocean.
12. Seyyid said introduced taxation on all exports and imports hence he successfully collected a lot of revenue that he used to develop Zanzibar’s economy.
13. He organised trade caravans into the interior of E. Africa which greatly increased the volume of exports of Indian Ocean trade
14. Seyyid Said personally signed important trade agreements with several chiefs from the interior of East Africa like the one he signed with the chief of Nyamwezi which allowed other traders to operate in his area.
15. He established and developed a one man’s leadership at the coast of East Africa hence created a kind of political federation at the coast.
16. He maintained peace, stability and harmony on the East African coast.
17. He greatly inspired and encouraged people to participate in long distance trade.
18. He encouraged slave trade which greatly destabilized several Kingdoms in the interior of E Africa.
19. He ended the wrangles and quarrels that had occurred between the Busaidi and Oman rulers.
20. He encouraged and facilitated the spread of Islam which acted as a unifying factor among the coastal people.
21. He led to the development of new towns in the interior like Tabor and Bagamoyo, through encouraging the penetration of Arabs into the interior of East Africa.
22. He constructed several Mosques and Quranic schools along the East African coast.
23. He greatly aided the spread of the Swahili culture and Arabic language into several parts of East Africa.
24. Through Seyyid Said, new goods were introduced at the East African coast like glass, guns, beads, cloths and others.
25. Seyyid Said participated greatly in the signing of treaties that ended slave trade. He died in 1856 after having changed the condition at the East African.

**Revision questions**

1. Why were the Oman Arabs interested in controlling the East African coast?
2. What were the reasons for the conflicts / struggle between the Omani Arabs, Busaidi and the Mazrui governors?
3. Why did Seyyid said shift his capital from Oman to Zanzibar?
4. How did Seyyid Said develop the economy of Zanzibar?
5. What was the significance of Said Seyyid in the history of East African coast?

**CHAPTER 7**  
**MIGRATIONS AND PEOPLING OF EAST AFRICA**

Different groups of people migrated into East Africa and they included the Bantu, Luo, and Plain Nilotes among others.

**THE BANTU MIGRATION INTO EAST AFRICA**

**WHO WERE THE BANTU?**

1. The word Bantu is used to refer to a group of people who speak common languages with the root word “NTU”
2. Scholars are still debating the origin of the Bantu.
3. Bantu are believed to be the largest group of people in East Africa.
4. The Bantu of East Africa include several people such as Banyoro, Bagisu, Sukuma, Rufigi, Zaramo, Yao, Pogoro, Sangu Nyamwezi, Gogo and Baganda among others.
5. Bantu belong to the Negroid race that is believed to have come turn the Niger Congo area.
6. They migrated to East Africa before 1000 A.D
7. The Bantu of East Africa however are believed to have had a common origin.
8. Still there are scholars who hold the view that Bantu migrated from West Africa around Cameroon Highlands.
9. The migration of the Bantu into East Africa was not accidental. They were propelled or forced by factors such as population pressure, need for fertile lands and so on.

**CAUSES OF THE MIGRATION OF THE BANTU IN EAST AFRICA**

1. Population pressure that resulted into shortage of land forced Bantu to migrate into East Africa.
2. Soil exhaustion that had been caused by overstocking and overgrazing in their cradle land led to Bantu migration.
3. Internal conflicts among the Bantu such as family quarrels caused the Bantu migration.
4. External conflicts and pressures impulse to the Bantu from neighbouring communities, for example the pygmies caused the Bantu to migrate.
5. Diseases and Epidemics such as small pox, Nagana that affected them with their animals.
6. The natural calamities such as floods especially for those who had been living around forested areas must have caused them to migrate.
7. Unsuitable geographical climate must also have caused the Bantu to migrate.
8. The need to expand and export their cultures like iron working to other areas.
9. Poor leadership in their cradle land must have caused the Bantu migration.
10. Peer pressure and group influence where some Bantu migrated simply because they had seen relatives or their friends moving.
11. The youth were escaping from the authority of the old. They needed independence.
12. The Southward extension of the desert which threatened and disgusted the Bantu forced them to migrate.
13. The search for water for their animals and for their own consumption forced the Bantu to migrate.
14. Search for good and better pastures in that having been animal keepers, they lacked pastures in their cradle land hence they migrated to get such pastures.
15. Adventurism whereby the Bantu simply migrated due to the love to know what was happening beyond their areas.
16. Occurrence of misfortunes like death of beloved ones made the Bantu insecure hence leading to migration.

**THE COURSE OFTHE MIGRATION AND THE SETTLEMENT OF THE BANTU INTO EAST AFRICA**

1. It’s not very clear as to when the Bantu started their migration into East Africa. However it is assumed that by around 1000 A.D, the Bantu had started migrating.
2. Their migration was gradual and seasonal.
3. They had both forward and backward migrations.
4. The Bantu did not move wholesomely but they moved in smaller units of either as families but not as tribes.
5. There were four clear migration movements of the Bantu into E. Africa   
   namely: - Interlacustrine Bantu, Central and Northern Tanzania Bantu, Coastal and Highland Bantu then the Southern Tanzania Bantu.
6. The inter1acustrine Bantu included: Baganda, Banyoro, Banyankole, Batoro, Bagisu,   
   and Burundians. They moved from the Congo forest before 1000 A.D.
7. **The Interlacustrine Bantu** were attracted to settle north and west of Lake Victoria   
   due to fertility of the land.
8. They included the Baganda, Bakiga, Baluya, and Bagisu among others.
9. The Bantu in this category were agriculturists and that is why they occupied areas with plenty of rainfall and fertile soils.
10. The Interlacustrine Bantu used the route between L. Albert and L Edward.
11. These Bantu at a latter stage were conquered by the Chwezi.
12. Another group of Bantu moved to Eastern Uganda and Western Kenya.
13. These gave rise to tribes such as Gisu, Luyia and Samia.
14. **The Central and Western Tanzanian Bantu** included Ha, Vinza, Sukuma, and Kamba and others.
15. These used the route between Lakes Edward and Tanganyika.
16. They first settled in central Tanzania.
17. At first these Bantu were farmers but changed to pastoralism and latter to trade like the Nyamwezi.
18. The central and Northern Tanzanian Bantu seem to have migrated through Karagwe, Toro, and Ankole and Bukoba areas before the Chwezi invasion.
19. The migration of central and western Tanzania Bantu was slow and gradual. It took place between 1000 and 1300.
20. From 1300, these Bantu migrants continued to live in small groups where their rulers were called “NTEMI” chiefs.
21. **The coastal and highland** **Bantu or the Eastern Tanzania** was another group of Bantu who migrated into East Africa.
22. These included: the Taita, Pokomo, Pare, Kamba, Kikuyu, Embu, Chuka and others.
23. This Bantu group crossed the Tanzania plateau between 1000 and1300 A.D .From Taita, they dispersed to several areas.
24. The Taita dispersal was slow and took place between 1300 and1500 A.D.
25. When other groups of Bantu were forced out of the Taita area, the Chagga and pare remained. The Chagga developed a centralised type of government.
26. The groups which were forced out between 1300 A.D and 1500A.D took two different directions.
27. The first group included Pokomo, Giryana, Segeju and other related groups moved north wards along the coast to Shungwaya where they became known as the coastal Bantu.
28. The second group from the Taita dispersal was the Mount Kenya or High lands people. The Highland Bantu included the Chuka, Kamba, Embu and others.
29. The Chuka came up to the Tana River and arrived in about 1300 A.D. The Embu followed them and arrived in about 1450, and then the Kikuyu arrived in around 1500.
30. These highland people were confined largely to the forest areas by the Masai between 1600 and1800 A.D. They finally got land from the Dorobo.
31. **The Southern Tanzania Bantu** were the last Bantu group. These included Mwera, Luguru, Makonde, Rufigi and Zaramo.
32. They had first moved to the coast and Southern plateau areas from west and south ,where they established a strong coastal society mixing up with the earlier groups of hunters and Khoisan.
33. Another group of Southern Tanzania Bantu was agricultural in nature and included Bena, Ngindo, Pogoro, Hehe and so on.

**EFFECTS OF THE BANTU MIGRATION UPON THE PEOPLE AMONG WHOM THEY SETTLED**

1. The effects were political, social and economic in nature.
2. They were also both positive and negative.
3. The Bantu introduced the art of iron working in several parts of East Africa which improved agricultural production.
4. They took away the independence of the people they found.
5. They introduced centralized systems of administration in several parts of East Africa.
6. The Bantu introduced new fighting methods to the people among whom they settled.
7. Bantu displaced the original people from their areas as they were much stronger.
8. The Bantu led to evolvement of new tribes like Baganda, Banyoro, Bagishu, Pokomo, Chagga, and so on.
9. Population increase was realised in several parts of East Africa.
10. Land pressure resulted into the areas where the Bantu settled in East Africa.
11. New crops were introduced by the Bantu into East Africa like Bananas, Beans and so on.
12. The Bantu absorbed the smaller communities like the Sanje.
13. Introduced crop growing on a large scale into East Africa.
14. New Bantu languages were also introduced, for example Luganda, Lutooro, Runyoro and many others.
15. They introduced construction of more permanent houses into East Africa.
16. Inter-marriages resulted so that new tribes similar to the Bantu were formed.
17. The Bantu grabbed land from the people among whom they settled in East Africa.
18. The Bantu developed trade in East Africa. They came with several trading items like bark cloth and iron implements.
19. Forested areas were cleared for agriculture by the Bantu wherever they settled.
20. The Bantu fought several wars over land and other needs which resulted into insecurity.

**Revision questions**

1. Who were the Bantu?
2. What were the causes of the migration of the Bantu into East Africa?
3. Describe the migration and the settlement of the Bantu into East Africa.

What were the effects of the Bantu migration upon the people of East Africa?

**THE NGONI MIGRATION INTO EAST AFRICA**

**WHO WERE THE NGONI?**

1. The Ngoni were a group of Bantu who came from southern Africa to East Africa after 1850.
2. They left Southern Africa as a result of the “MFECANE”, a period of trouble and war in South Africa, caused by rise of aggressive leaders like Shaka of Zulu.
3. The Ngoni belonged to a larger Bantu family from Southern Africa who was known as the Nguni.
4. The Ngoni had relatives such as the Ndwandwe.
5. The Ngoni were a war like community. They were used to fighting and it is not surprising that they invaded the East African people.
6. The Ngoni like any other Bantu society had centralized authority, they were farmers and fisher men.
7. From southern Africa, the Ngoni settled in southern and central Tanzania dislocating the societies they found living in East Africa.

**REASONS FOR** **THE NGONI MIGRATION INTO EAST AFRICA**

1. The “Mfecane” revolution, that is to say the period of wars in South Africa caused their migration. They were running away from trouble caused by Shaka’s wars of expansion.
2. Population pressure, that is to say an increase in population in their area of South Africa caused scarcity of resources that forced them to migrate to look for more.
3. Specifically, Shaka’s wars of expansion caused the Ngoni migration.
4. Internal conflicts among the Ngoni in Southern Africa forced them to migrate.
5. External pressure and conflicts caused the Ngoni migration into East Africa.
6. Adventure, that is to say need to know what lay beyond Southern Africa.
7. Search for pastures for their animals caused the Ngoni migration.
8. Search for water for both animal and human consumption caused the Ngoni migration.
9. White invasion in Southern Africa, the Boers, who came from Holland into South Africa forced the Ngoni to migrate.
10. Land and soil exhaustion must have led to Ngoni migration due to over stocking and over grazing.
11. Able leadership, that is to say the charismatic leaders like Zwangendaba and Maputo encouraged Ngoni to migrate.
12. Epidemic diseases like small pox and malaria also forced the Ngoni to migrate.
13. Need to establish independent communities into East Africa forced Ngoni to migrate.
14. Poor climatic conditions in several parts of Southern Africa forced the Ngoni to migrate to East Africa.
15. Group influence, that is to say some Ngoni simply migrated because family members or friends had migrated.

**COURSE OF THE NGONI MIGRATION AND SETTLEMENT INTO EAST AFRICA**

1. The period of “Mfecane” revolution mainly caused the Ngoni migration.
2. The Ngoni left Southern Africa in about 1820.
3. Ngoni migrated from Southern Africa into two large groups.
4. The first and largest group was led by chief Zwangendaba.
5. As they moved North ward from Southern Africa, other people joined them and formed a large a large group with a large army.
6. Zwangendaba’s group crossed river Zambezi in 1835.
7. They travelled through Malawi and settled around Fipa (Ufipa) in around 1840.
8. The second and smaller group of Ngoni from Southern Africa was the Maseko- Ngoni.
9. The Maseko-Ngoni was led by a chief known as chief Maputo.
10. These moved through Mozambique and Eastern Malawi and settled at Songea.
11. In 1848, the courageous Zwangendaba died and upon his death, his group split into five different groups.
12. Three of the groups went back to Central Africa, where perhaps they settled in Malawi and Zambia.
13. The two groups that never went back were the Tuta-Ngoni and Gwangara -Ngoni
14. The Tuta Ngoni moved and settled in North Eastern Tanzania among the Nyamwezi in around 1850. It was this group that took the young Mirambo into captivity in Bugomba.
15. The Gwangara moved eastwards from Ufipa under the leadership of a man called Zulu-Gama; they defeated the Hehe and Sangu.
16. In around 1860, the Gwangara group had reached Songea where Maputo’s group had settled earlier. At Songea, the Ngoni had fierce battles among themselves which led into further division.
17. In 1860, the Gwangara Ngoni settled at Songea after defeating the Maseko Ngoni and driving them away.
18. One of the split groups were known to be under chief Maputo, they moved backward and crossed river Ruvuma.
19. The other group that had split fled northwards to Morogoro and they came to be known as the Mbuga Ngoni.

**WHY THE NGONI WERE SUCCESSFUL IN THEIR INVASION AND SETTLEMENT INTO EAST AFRICA**

The Ngoni registered success in their invasion and settlement upon the people of East Africa because of the following.

1. The Ngoni succeed in their invasion due to a number of factors some being intentional and others being accidental.
2. The Ngoni had acquired super military techniques from Shaka, the Zulu King.
3. The Ngoni were very experienced in warfare, resulting from the “Mfecane” revolution, that is to say the period of wars in Southern Africa had equipped them with better warfare.
4. The Ngoni were Fortunate to have got wonderful and charismatic leaders like. Zwangendaba and Maputo.
5. Their soldiers were better trained and better equipped than their counterparts.
6. They absorbed and conquered young people in their invasion, which enabled them to build a much more dependable force.
7. Full determination and courage that the Ngoni had led them to victory.
8. The disunity and lack of harmony among the East African people greatly assisted the   
   Ngoni to succeed.
9. Ngoni had highly disciplined soldiers who respected their commanders and this automatically made them to succeed.
10. The Ngoni had numerical strength, that is to say they had come in large numbers.
11. Superior military tactics like cow-horn military formation in which they engulfed and easily surrounded their enemies led to their success.
12. The Ngoni fighters were very aggressive and ruthless. They could not spare their enemies who could not surrender.
13. The Ngoni met and encountered weak opponents who could not wage serious resistance against them.
14. The Ngoni fighters were very motivated, that is to say they were promised rewards after any victory.
15. Surprise attacks that the Ngoni organised against their opponents had to bring victory on to their side, because they found people who were not ready at all to fight them.

**IMPACTS OR EFFECTS OF THE NGONI INVASION**

1. The effects were destructive and constructive. Still they were political, social and economic in outlook.
2. The Ngoni superimposed themselves on to the people they defeated.
3. Strong leaders emerged out of the Ngoni migration, for example Mirambo and NyunguYa Mawe.
4. The Ngoni invasion disrupted and affected economic activities like agriculture. This resulted into famine.
5. They conquered and absorbed East African people and the East African people forgot about the culture.
6. The Ngoni invasion disrupted peace in several parts of East Africa.
7. Many East African people copied the Ngoni military organisation. They were able to use the same on the Ngoni invaders.
8. Slave trade activities increased in several parts of East Africa due to the confusion that was created by Ngoni invaders.
9. Property like plantations were destroyed hence famine set in.
10. Loss of lives due to deadly fighting with Ngoni invaders.
11. Depopulation was experienced in several areas, especially in Southern Tanzania due to serious fighting.
12. East African communities were looted and plundered by the Ngoni invaders, which led to untold poverty and suffering.
13. The Ngoni introduced a number of crops into East Africa, for example crops like Sorghum and pumpkins among others.
14. The Ngoni invasion prepared East African people for the challenge against imperialism, for example chief Mkwawa of the Hehe used the acquired military tactics from Ngoni against Germans.
15. The Ngoni displaced East African communities due to their strength, for example the Yao were highly displaced by the Ngoni.
16. Some societies faced the challenge of extinction or being wiped out example the Bena, Sangu and others.
17. The Ngoni invasion inspired or encouraged several East African communities to form protective armies. This was true of Mirambo who formed the Ruga Ruga.

**Revision questions**

1. Who were the Ngoni?
2. Why did they migrate into East Africa?
3. Describe their migration and settlement into East Africa.
4. Why did the Ngoni succeed in the establishment and settlement of themselves into east Africa?
5. What were the impacts of Ngoni invasion upon the people of east Africa?

**THE MASAI MIGRATION INTO EAST AFRICA**

**ORIGIN OF THE MASAI**

1. The Masai are referred to as Plain Nilotes because they settled on the plains.
2. They originally belonged to the same group with the Karamojong, Iteso, Turkana and Kumam.
3. Their cradle land is believed to have been in the Lake Rudolf areas where they separated from the Iteso.
4. They existed as several small groups but they spoke similar language, common way of life and follow the same customs and beliefs.
5. Presently the Masai are identified as the Uashin Gisu Masai, Laikipia Masai, Samburu, Iloikop, Purko and Kwavi Masai.
6. The Masai lived in Central Kenya although some spread in Northern Tanzania around mountain Kilimanjaro.
7. They Masai were great lovers of cattle which was their most important cultural activity.
8. Some of the Masai on settling in East Africa adopted agriculture especially those who lost cattle to raiders and animal diseases.

**REASONS FOR THE MIGRATION OF THE MASAI INTO EAST AFRICA**

1. The cradle land is believed to have been in the Lake Rudolf areas where they separated from the Iteso.
2. The Masai were referred to as Plain Nilotes because they settled on the plains.
3. Being pastoralists it is clear that the Masai suffered from overstocking and it is possible that they moved to look for space for their animals.
4. They must have moved to look for pasture and water for their animals.
5. Internal conflicts, that is to say quarrels and wrangles among the Masai could have caused problems within the families and clans leading to their migration from their motherland.
6. Overpopulation among the Masai in the Lake Rudolf areas must have also made them to disperse into different areas.
7. External attacks from among the neighbours like the Galla forced the ancestors of the Masai to move down into East Africa.
8. The Masai were naturally warriors hence it is possible that they moved out to exert pressure on the smaller groups.
9. Drought must have caused much suffering because it reduced on the out put of pasture hence leading to their migration.
10. Famine which led to starvation among the Masai groups forced them out.
11. They had a culture of moving from place to place given the fact that they were pastoralists.
12. Diseases among people and animals like small pox and Nagana respectively was yet another reason for the Masai dispersion to different parts of East Africa.
13. Adventure and exploration where the Masai especially the youth who wanted to know what was happening in other areas forced the Masai to move out of their cradle land.
14. Some of the Masai on settling in East Africa adopted agriculture an indication that they also needed fertile soils.

**THE COURSE OF THE MASAI MIGRATION**

1. The cradle land of the Masai is believed to have been in the Lake Rudolf areas where they separated from the Iteso and Karamojong.
2. The Iteso left first together with the Karamojong to the North Eastern corner of Uganda.
3. The tradition of the Masai reveals that they were led by their leaders from Rudolf areas to the Uasin Gishu plateau north of Kitale.
4. It is also advanced that about 1000 years ago, the ancestors of the Masai dispersed and moved to the eastern side of Lake Rudolf.
5. Masai migration was an invasion characterized by warfare on the tribes found in the areas they settled.
6. They broke up into six groups namely Uashin Gisu Masai, Laikipia Masai, Samburu, Iloikop, Purko and Kwavi Masai.
7. The groups spread in the Central part of the Kenya Highland.
8. Others moved down the Rift Valley into Tanganyika.
9. They furthest group to settle in the north was Samburu sub group who settled to the south of Lake Rudolf. They raided the neighbouring tribes like the Galla and Rendile in the North East. The Pokot and Turkana in the west were also raided.
10. Another group of the Masai settled at the Uasin Gishu plateau west of Lake Baringo where they fought and displaced the kalenjin to the highlands. They also fought the Nandi.
11. Yet another Masai group settled on the Laikipia plateau on the Eastern side of Lake Baringo. They became known as Laikipia Masai.
12. More group of the Masai spread and occupied the Rift valley corridor and along the Lakes Natron, Naivasha and Elementaita. They formed two major groups, the Iloikop who became farmers and Purko who remained pastoralists.
13. Another group of the Masai settled in Ngong hills near Nairobi while others displaced the Nyika and Galla near the Kenyan coast.
14. The furthest group of the Masai moved to the south of Kilimanjaro in Northern Tanganyika but further expansion was blocked by the Hehe and Gogo Bantu groups.

**EFFECTS OF THE MASAI MIGRATION**

1. The Masai migration had both positive and negative effects upon the people among whom they settled.
2. Their effects of migration were also political, social and economic in nature.
3. The Masai migration led to the break up of some tribes, for example the Kalenjin broke into Pokot, Kipsigis, Marsabit and Tuken.
4. Other tribes were absorbed by the Masai community, for example some of the Kalenjin were absorbed. It was only the Nandi who challenged the Masai.
5. Yet others were displaced, for example the Totoga and Karamojong were displaced by the Masai.
6. The Masai traded with people among whom they settled, for example the Kikuyu from whom they got goods in exchange for their cattle products.
7. They also participated in the long distance trade with their neighbours.
8. The Masai wars of cattle raiding caused a lot of instabilities among their neighbours.
9. Many people lost their lives as a result of raiding of the Masai hence leading to depopulation.
10. The Masai were able to intermarry with the people among whom they settled peacefully, for example they intermarried with the Kikuyu and Chagga.
11. The Masai were also able to borrow some words from among some tribes like the Bantu.
12. The Masai introduced their culture among the people whom they settled, for example the Kikuyu and Embu copied the Masai culture of forbidding the women from eating the meat of wild animals and birds.
13. The Masai also introduced their fighting weapons among some Bantu tribes, for example large oval-shaped shields.
14. The Masai adopted the practice of circumcision of both male and female from the highland Nilotes.

**Revision questions**

1. Describe the origin of the Masai people.
2. What were the causes of the migration of the Masai?
3. Describe the course of the Masai migration.
4. How were the people among whom they settled affected by their migration?

**THE MIGRATION OF THE** **PLAIN NILOTES INTO EAST AFRICA**

**THE MIGRATION OF THE** **ITESO INTO EAST AFRICA**

**REASONS FOR THE ITESO MIGRATION**

1. The Iteso belonged to Plain Nilotes.
2. The Iteso belonged to the Jie group that included the Turkana, Kuman, Karamojong and Iteso
3. Population increase which led to scarcity of essentials like land led to the migration of the Iteso.
4. External conflicts exerted onto the Iteso by the nearby communities especially from Ethiopia also forced them out of their motherland.
5. Internal conflicts, that is to say, quarrels and wrangles within the Iteso themselves like within families and clans.
6. Adventurism and exploration, where the Iteso wanted to know what was happening in other areas.
7. Overstocking and overgrazing that led to land exhaustion might have also forced them out.
8. Animal and animal Diseases like small pox and Nagana was yet another reason for the Iteso migration into East Africa.
9. They had a culture of moving since they were already pastoralists.
10. Famine that led to starvation forced them out of their motherland to go and look for survival.
11. Drought that caused much suffering because it reduced agricultural output also led to their migration.
12. Search for water for their animals and for their domestic use.
13. Search for pastures for their animals.
14. Other Iteso moved on seeing their friends moving. They were influenced by their friends and therefore some moved aimlessly.

**COURSE OF MIGRATION AND SETTLEMENT OF THE ITESO INTO EAST AFRICA**

1. The Iteso came in from the direction of Ethiopia.
2. They belonged to the Jie group together with the Karamojong, Kumam and Turkana.
3. They were pastoralists and from their cradle land, they settled in the area of   
   present Karamoja.
4. By A.D 1500, the Iteso had already moved to their present day Teso land.
5. They occupied Soroti, Kumi and Ngora areas.
6. The migration of the Iteso from Karamoja took place at the end of the 18th century.
7. By 1730, the Iteso were established on the shores of Lake Bisinia in Kumi and the Soroti area in Usuku.
8. By the beginning of the 19th century, the population of the Iteso had increased in Usuku and there was a further dispersal in all directions.
9. Some Iteso went to western Kenya where they mixed with the Bukusu.
10. During their migration from Usuku, those who remained in Uganda came into contact with the Langi.
11. Some Iteso displaced the Bamasaaba, Bagisu and Bakusu who were forced to the mountain Elgon areas.
12. The Iteso continued to expand to Tororo areas displacing the Banyala and the Bagwere.

**EFFECTS OF THE ITESO MIGRATION UPON THE PEOPLE AMONG WHOM THEY SETTLED**

1. The Iteso migration had both positive and negative effects upon the people among whom they settled.
2. The effects were also political, social and economic in nature.
3. Their arrival into east Africa led to population increase especially where they settled peacefully.
4. Their migration led to permanent settlements in Eastern Uganda and Western Kenya.
5. The Iteso were able to introduce a new language Ateso among the people whom they settled.
6. They were also responsible for the introduction of cattle rearing in the eastern part of Uganda and other parts of Kenya.
7. The Iteso introduced barter trade among the Luo and the Bantu. They exchanged hides, skins, goats and ivory for bark cloth, beads, iron implements and cooking utensils from the Banyoro.
8. As the Iteso settled in east Africa, they were able to introduce new weapons among the people whom they settled, for example introduced spears that they called “Emachar” used for defence.
9. They came with the idea of building grass thatched huts decorated with cow dung on both the floors and the walls. This practice was introduced among the people whom they settled.
10. Still the Iteso introduced the idea of brewing beer called “Ajon” brewed from millet and sorghum.
11. Crafts making where baskets were woven from plants and stools carved from wood was also introduced by the Iteso.
12. There was widespread raiding between the Iteso and their neighbours as a result of their migration. They raided the Bagishu and Karamojong.
13. The Iteso formed new decentralized societies in the Eastern part of Uganda and western Kenya.
14. The Iteso were also able to acquire the idea of practicing farming from the bantu among whom they settled although they retained their habit of cattle rearing.

**Revision questions**

1. Why did the plain Nilotes migrate into East Africa?
2. Describe the course of their migration and settlement into East Africa.
3. Why did the Iteso migrate to East Africa?
4. Describe the course of their migration and settlement into East Africa.
5. What were the effects of the Iteso migration into East Africa?

**MIGRATION AND SETTLEMENT OF RIVER LAKE NILOTES OR THE LUO INTO EAST AFRICA**

**WHO WERE THE LUO?**

1. The Luo were a group of people who were at times referred to as the River- Lake Nilotes.
2. They were also referred to as “Jonam” meaning the River- Lake People.
3. Their motherland was Bahr-el-Ghazel in Southern Sudan.
4. While in Sudan they were related to three other groups of the Nilotes. These were: the Nuer, Shilluk and Dinka.
5. The Luo were ancestors of the Alur, Acholi, Jophadhola and the Kenyan Luo.
6. The Luo were originally Pastoralists, that is to say they were animal Keepers.
7. They also carried out farming on a small scale.
8. They were sometimes fishermen because they lived along the banks of River Nile.
9. They arrived in East Africa around the 15th Century.
10. They were the founders of the Bito dynasty of Bunyoro-Kitara.
11. The Luo are now one of the largest tribes in East Africa.

**REASONS FOR THE MIGRATION OF THE LUO INTO EAST AFRICA**

It is not very clear why the Luo left their motherland, however the following reasons have been suggested to explain their migration.

1. Overpopulation caused the migration of the Luo.
2. Desire of getting pastures and water for their animals after all they were pastoralists.
3. Internal quarrels or conflicts within their families also forced the Luo into East Africa.
4. External pressure, that is to say the pressure from the nearby tribes and Ethiopian side caused the Luo to migrate.
5. Natural calamities like floods might have caused the Luo to migrate.
6. The need to export their political and social cultures forced them to migrate.
7. Adventure and exploration, that is to say the need to know what was happening elsewhere.
8. Overstocking and overgrazing that cause land exhaustion led the Luo to migrate.
9. They had a culture of moving since they were pastoralists. They were migratory in nature.
10. Search for fertile lands that could support agriculture caused them to migrate. The Luo also carried out small scale cultivation.
11. Group influence. Some Luo simply migrated because they saw their friends and family members migrating.
12. Famine that led to starvation might have also forced the Luo to migrate.
13. Diseases like small pox and Nagana forced the Luo to migrate.
14. Southward expansion of the desert greatly caused the Luo to migrate.
15. It is also believed that the Luo were invaded by locusts especially those who carried out crop cultivation.
16. The Luo were also naturally warriors who were used to fighting. It is possible that they migrated to get areas of control.

**COURSE OF THE LUO MIGRATION AND SETTLEMENT INTO EAST AFRICA**

1. Between 1300 and 1450A.D, the Nilotes in Southern Sudan began to send groups to look for new areas for settlement, pasture and water. Some of these moved northwards. These were the Nuer, Shilluk and Dinka.
2. The Luo group went up the Nile or southwards. They kept close to the waterside because they needed water for their animals as well as for themselves. Sudan was generally a dry place.
3. From Bahr-el-Ghazel, the Luo moved up to Pubungu in the present day Pakwach in west Nile where they first settled.
4. It was at Pubungu that the legend reveals that there was a conflict between the two brothers, Giipir (Nyiipir) and Labongo over the spear and the bead. There was a split.
5. One group led by Giipir and Tifool moved Northwest and settled among the Lendu, Okebu and Madi. They intermarried with them and gave rise to the Alur people.
6. The second group from Pubungu was led by Labongo. They moved Northeast to the present day Acholiland, where they met the Madi, mixed with them and in the process intermarried with them and gave rise to the Acholi people.
7. The third group to leave Pubungu was led by Olum Jobiito, the father of Giipir, Labongo and Tifool. They moved southwards up to a place called Pawir (Chope) in Northern Bunyoro.
8. It was at Pawir where the Luo fought the Chwezi and defeated them. They concluded that there were no men in the place and they called it “Coo Pe” in the Luo words meaning “men not there”. To date the place is called Chope.
9. They overthrew the Chwezi and established themselves as the new rulers of the Bito dynasty of Bunyoro-Kitara.
10. In around 1500 A.D, other groups of the Luo that had settled in Pawir left and moved into the northern part of Lake Kyoga, where they met the Ateker and the Kumam.
11. Their mixing with the Ateker made them to abandon their Language and pick up the Luo language and became known as the Langi.
12. Other groups of the Luo moved from the Acholi areas via Mountain Elgon and crossed into the present day Budama areas. They united under the leadership of Adhola and became known as the “Jopadhola” meaning “the people of Adhola”.
13. Some of the Luo left the interlacustrine areas and Sudan and moved into western Kenya to become known as the Kenyan Luo or Jaluo.
14. The Luo moved into Kenya in four main groups namely: The Joka-Jok, Jok-Owiny, Jok-Omollo and the Refugee group.
15. The Jok-Jok led by Ojok came from Acholiland between 1500 and1550 having crossed Pubungu. They settled in an area in Western Kenya known as Ramogi Hill.
16. The second group Jok-Owiny led by Owiny came in the period 1550-1625, went southwards through Mt. Elgon, Busoga and Budama.
17. There they settled for sometime and then left and moved and settled in Alego and Kadimo in Western Kenya.
18. The third group, Jok-Omolo led by Omollo had earlier settled in Northern Bunyoro. But in their movement to Nyanza, they went through Lake Kyoga and Busoga.
19. The Fourth group (The Refugees) moved from 1600-1800. This refugee group settled in various parts of Nyanza. They came from places such as Buganda, Busoga, Sese Island, Tanzania and Gusii.
20. The Luo finally settled in different places, continued with pastoralism and adopted some farming.
21. Today, the Luo people include the Acholi, Alur, Jopadhola, Langi and Kenyan Luo.

**EFFECTS OF LUO MIGRATION UPON THE PEOPLE OF EAST AFRICA**

* 1. The effects were both positive and negative.
  2. Still they were social, political and economic in nature.
  3. The Luo established themselves as chiefs over the local people
  4. They led to intermarriages leading to new languages like Alur, Acholi and so on.
  5. In Acholi, by 1700, small Luo became dominant and centralised states began to emerge.
  6. They led to the decline of the Chwezi Empire of Bunyoro- Kitara.
  7. They established the Biito dynasty which lasted from 4-5 centuries
  8. They displaced people of Bunyoro especially the Bahima who had to migrate.
  9. They drove away some of the Bantu groups from Samia from west of Lake Victoria.
  10. They increased population in East Africa as they came in large numbers which added to the already established population in East Africa.
  11. The Luo led to land disputes in East Africa, where they took away land of the people they found in East Africa.
  12. Some Bantu speaking people at Alego were defeated and some were absorbed into Luo Linguistic group.
  13. In some areas, the Luo lost their languages.
  14. They introduced the idea of chiefdoms in East Africa, that is to say the Rwotship.
  15. They introduced the idea of keeping short homed cattle especially in Northern Uganda.
  16. They introduced pet names (empako) among the Banyoro and Batooro, for example Ateenyi, Akiiki, Amooti, Abwooli, Atwooki and Apuuli among others.
  17. They led to the formation of large political units in Buganda and Bunyoro.
  18. The Luo initiated the granting of land to clans.
  19. Developed the system of burial sites for the Abakama.
  20. Various people emerged due to intermarriages with the Luo people, for example the Acholi, chope, Alur.
  21. In Bunyoro, they introduced new regalia like the royal drums, a royal fire and so on.
  22. They introduced new types of crops like Sim Sim, millet, Peas and many others.
  23. During their movements, there were inter-clan wars leading to depopulation.
  24. The Luo destroyed property in the wars of migration.
  25. The Abaluyia copied some aspects of Luo initiation rites like removing the sixth   
      bottom teeth.
  26. The Luo coming into East Africa increased warfare in the region.

**Revision questions**

1. Trace the migration and settlement of the Luo in East Africa up to 1800.
2. Describe the migration of the Luo speakers into East Africa.
3. Who were the Luo?
4. What were the effects of the Luo- migration upon the people of East Africa?
5. Why did the Luo migrate into E Africa?
6. Describe the course of Luo migration into E. Africa.
7. What were the effects of the migration and settlement of the Plain Nilotes into East Africa?

**CHAPTER 8  
STATES IN THE LAKE REGION (INTERLASTRINE REGION)**

The Interlacustrine region was that area found around Lake Victoria or surrounding Lake Victoria. A number of Kingdoms were founded in the area and they included Tembuzi, Chwezi, Buganda, Ankole, Karagwe, and Bunyoro among others.

**THE ABATEMBUZI**

**THEIR CONTRIBUTION TO THE HISTORY OF BUNYORO KITARA KINGDOM**

1. Available History has it that the first inhabitants of the interlacustrine region were the Tembuzi.
2. The explanation of their origin is surrounded by so many myths.
3. The Bachwezi are said to have been Demi gods.
4. That they were capable of performing miracles.
5. It is said that their empire lasted about 4-5 generations.
6. The Batembuzi were referred to as Abakama.
7. Other traditions say that they came before the Chwezi and they had lived since the time of creation.
8. Yet other traditions say that the Batembuzi just dropped from heaven and this could be the reason why they were capable of performing miracles.
9. More traditions add that the Batembuzi could not die. That at the end of their rule, they either disappeared or went back to heaven where they fell from.
10. The Batembuzi were the ones who established the Kingdom of Bunyoro-Kitara that developed around the ancient Kingdom of Bunyoro, Ankole, Buganda, Tooro, Karagwe, Wanga, Urundi and mostly around Lake Victoria.
11. The ruler of the Batembuzi is said to have been Ruhanga also called Creator or God.
12. In his leadership he got assistance from his brother called Nkya.
13. The above belief is common in Western Uganda among the Nkole and the Nyoro.
14. They say that Ruhanga had no son while his brother Nkya had four.
15. The four children of Nkya were: Kintu, Kakama Ntwale, Kairu, and Kahuma.
16. Kahuma is believed to be the ancestor of the Cattle Keepers or herdsmen.
17. Kairu was the ancestor of the Farmers in western Uganda.
18. Kakama Ntwale became the ancestor of rulers.
19. The tradition adds that Ruhanga and Kintu went back to heaven.
20. They left behind Kakama Ntwale to be the ruler of the early kingdom.
21. That Kakama Ntwale also disappeared and was replaced by his son Baba.
22. Baba was succeeded by Ngonzaki.
23. Ngonzaki was succeeded by Isaza whom record has it that he was the last king of the Tembuzi.
24. The end of the Tembuzi just like their origin is mysterious. They are believed to have disappeared or gone back to heaven where they had come from.
25. They were succeeded by the Chwezi who set up their own kingdom.

**Revision question**

What were the contributions of the Batembuzi in the history of the interlacustrine region?

**THE CHWEZI EMPIRE**

**WHO WERE THE CHWEZI?**

1. Indeed the Chwezi origin is not clear.
2. The Chwezi are said to have been of the Galla origin.
3. They are also believed to be of Cushitic origin.
4. Others say they could have been of the Greek origin.
5. They are also claimed to have been Portuguese.
6. Still the Chwezi are believed to have been similar to Egyptians or simply Egyptians.
7. The Chwezi were semi-gods
8. They had super-natural powers, that is to say they performed miracles with a lot of ease.
9. The Chwezi were tall and light skinned people.
10. They were the people who established Bunyoro- Kitara Kingdom.
11. The Chwezi are believed to have been herdsmen who kept long horned cattle.
12. They were also great sportsmen who enjoyed games like wrestling among others.
13. The Chwezi were known by various names such as Hinda, Hima, and so on.
14. They were organized on clan basis socially and politically.
15. The Chwezi are believed to have disappeared when annoyed.
16. They were great hunters who used long spears
17. The Chwezi were skilled in pottery. They made round bowls, Jars and decorated dishes.
18. The Chwezi were people who established a dynasty that ruled over in the lake region before coming of the Luo.
19. The Chwezi constructed reed palaces.
20. They had royal regalia that included among others arrows, drums, spears, and so on.
21. The Chwezi historical settlement sites can still be found in places like Tooro, Rwanda, Burundi, and other places around the interlacustrine region.
22. The Chwezi’s first leader was Ndahura a grandson of Isaaza, the last Tembuzi ruler.
23. The Chwezi were people who dug long trenches around their palaces and Kraals for defensive reasons.
24. The Chwezi had a capital at a place called Bigobyamugenyi.
25. The Chwezi constructed a gigantic or very 1arge empire that included areas such as Bunyoro, Ankole, Buganda, Karagwe and others.
26. Ndahura who was their first leader was succeeded by Wamara, who was the last Chwezi ruler.

**WHY THE CHWEZI ARE REMEMBERED IN THE HISTORY OF BUNYORO KITARA**

**Note that** the topic is similar to the importance, significance, effects / impacts of the Chwezi in the history of Bunyoro Kitara.

1. The Chwezi are remembered because of several effects some of which were positive and others negative.
2. They introduced the long horned cattle in the interlacustrine areas.
3. The Chwezi introduced games like “Omweso”, that is to say a board game and wrestling among others.
4. They introduced the digging of trenches around palaces for defence purposes.
5. They introduced the construction of reed-palaces around the homes.
6. The Chwezi also introduced the growing of coffee which improved economic potentials in Bunyoro and East Africa at large.
7. They introduced royal regalia, for example, drums, spears, that acted as symbols of power.
8. The Chwezi introduced wonderful pottery making especially in Bunyoro.
9. They also introduced iron working and smelting among the people whom they settled.
10. The Chwezi introduced the idea of building grass thatched huts that were smeared with cow dung.
11. Their capital at Bigo byamugenyi even up to date fetches foreign exchange as it is a wonderful historical site.
12. They performed miracles, that is to say they could disappear when annoyed, hence indeed, and they are still remembered for that miraculous act.
13. They are important for having established the kingdom of Bunyoro Kitara.
14. They established an extensive empire far bigger than Bunyoro.
15. The Chwezi led to population increase in the area.
16. They also gave room for the establishment of Kingdoms like Bunyoro, Buganda, Ankole, and Tooro among others.
17. They were great sportsmen hence East Africans learnt from them skills of Sportsmanship.
18. The Chwezi introduced centralised monarchies in Buganda, Bunyoro and other areas.

**SOCIAL, POLITICAL AND ECONOMIC ORGANISATION OF THE CHWEZI OF BUNYORO KITARA**

1. **Socially** the Chwezi lived in grass thatched houses.
2. They were great sportsmen and therefore had a lively social life.
3. They had miraculous powers.
4. The Chwezi believed in the Supreme Being, God.
5. The Chwezi used to put on cowhide sandals.
6. They believed in witch craft, that is to say, the use of “juju”.
7. The Chwezi decorated their huts with cow dung.
8. The Chwezi leaders’ were highly respected by the members of the society.
9. They fed onmilk and meat.
10. **Economically** the Chwezi made iron implements.
11. They were great fishermen since they lived near lakes.
12. The Chwezi kept long horned cattle.
13. They lived a pastoral kind of life, that is to say they moved from one place to another in search for pastures and water of their animals.
14. The Chwezi also cultivated crops like coffee.
15. In addition, they chewed coffee as a stimulant.
16. The Chwezi were involved in the making of pottery.
17. **Politically** the Omukama was a political leader and was highly respected.
18. The Chwezi had centralised monarchies
19. The empire was ruled on blood kinship, that is to say the brothers were held together by family ties.
20. The political capital of the Chwezi was at Bigo byamuganyi.
21. The Chwezi had a large army for protection purposes.
22. The Chwezi had royal regalia that consisted of Drums, spears, stools and so on.
23. The Omukama who was the Chwezi leader lived in a palace made out of reeds.
24. The Chwezi had Ndahura as their firstleader and Wamara as the last leader.

**COLLAPSE OF THE CHWEZI EMPIRE**

1. It is not very clear as to why the Chwezi Empire collapsed.
2. By 1500, the Chwezi Empire had collapsed due to a number of reasons.
3. The Luo invasion of more stronger and organised people led to collapse of the Chwezi Empire.
4. The Chwezi Empire had become too big for effective administration.
5. Chwezi rulers were very aggressive and greedy, which annoyed the ruled people.
6. The empire had weak rulers who could no longer administer it.
7. Internal rebellions of people wanting to break away also distablised the kingdom hence collapse, for example Bantu.
8. There was epidemic like small pox that claimed the lives of many subjects causing the collapse of the Chwezi Empire.
9. There were also misunderstandings between chiefs and ruling princes.
10. Misfortunes such as death of Bihogo the beloved or darling cow of the princess also caused the collapse of the Chwezi empire, as they moved away linking the place to bad luck.
11. Outbreak of famine that led to starvation of the people forced the Chwezi to leave.
12. There was also the death of able leaders like Wamara.
13. There is a legend that argues that the Chwezi simply disappeared and gave way freely to the Luo.
14. The rise of small but aggressive kingdoms at the time like Buganda was yet another factor foe the Chwezi collapse.
15. There was lack of a standing army to protect the empire at a time when there were invaders.
16. The practice of nomadic pastoralism made the Chwezi Empire unsteady.   
    **Revision questions**
    1. Who were the Chwezi?
    2. Why are the Chwezi remembered in the history of Bunyoro Kitara?
    3. Describe the social, political, economic organisation of Bunyoro-Kitara under the Chwezi.
    4. Why did the Chwezi Empire collapse?

**THE KINGDOM OF KARAGWE UNDER RUHINDA**

**THE ORIGIN OF KARAGWE KINGDOM UNDER RUHINDA**

1. Karagwe was another important interlacustrine state that was between Rwanda and Lake Victoria, that is to say the north western part of Tanzania.
2. Karagwe was established in around the 16th century.
3. Karagwe had some Chwezi who joined up with some Luo.
4. Before the end of the 16th century, Ruhinda led his Chwezi immigrant and moved into Karagwe.
5. When Ruhinda reached Karagwe, he deposed the local leader, Nono the son of Malija of the Basitaa and set up his Hinda dynasty.
6. Later, Ruhinda sent his sons with spears cows and shields to establish Hinda dynasty in the neighboring areas.
7. As a result, the sons of Ruhinda led to the establishment of the Gisaka - Kyamtwara, Ihange Businza, Busubi, and so on.
8. On the death of Ruhinda, each of the above became independent.
9. The pastoral aristocracy ruled over the agricultural Banyombo.
10. These new corners, it is believed were welcomed because of their intelligence and administrative qualities.
11. The capital was equally established at Isingiro.
12. Their subjects were easily bribed with gifts of cattle hence governing them.

**THE CHANGES THAT RUHINDA INTRODUCED TO THE PEOPLE OF KARAGWE**

1. Ruhinda’s reforms or changes were political, economic and social.
2. He introduced re1igious beliefs, that is to say the importance of ancestral spirits.
3. Boys of the same age were gathered at the local chiefs’ residences which led to simplification of work and duties.
4. Such boys were taught good manners towards their equals and elders.
5. They also received military training from the local chief’s residence.
6. Ruhinda introduced long horned cattle.
7. Under Ruhinda, the clans were grouped into bigger units including Kyamtwara, Ihangiro, and Bukara among others.
8. Iron working was introduced where spears, hoes and arrows were made.
9. He developed trade in the area where goods were exchanged with others, for example iron products were exchanged for beads.
10. He introduced a class system in the society with the Hima as the rulers, who ruled over the lower classes of Banyambo.
11. He settled conflicts and disputes through the clan heads.
12. He gave powers to the clan heads to collect taxes and tributes.
13. Ruhinda introduced a centralised administration in the area which replaced the clan based system.
14. Ruhinda brought royal- regalia in the region that included spears drums and shields.
15. Ruhinda introduced new crops which included yams, millet and sorghum.

**POLITICAL, SOCIAL AND ECONOMIC ORGANIZATION OF KARAGWE**

1. Politically Karagwe was a centralized state.
2. It was ruled by a ruling family called the Hinda.
3. It fell under eight groups called Chiefdoms and each of chiefdoms was ruled by a clan leader.
4. Among the Karagwe, clan courts handled criminal and civil cases.
5. The chiefs had power over land. It was upon him to either give or take away land for the land user.
6. They had age sets among which soldiers were got to meet any external attack.
7. The highest political unit was the clan.
8. It was the Bahima who provide rulers among the people of Karagwe.
9. **Economically** the people Kept long-horned cattle from which they got milk, meat, for consumption and sale.
10. Skins were also got for sale and making clothes.
11. The chief controlled land on behalf of the people.
12. The leaders of Karagwe collected taxes to get more income for the development of the society.
13. The people of Karagwe were also farmers. They cultivated crops like Yams, millet, sorghum among others.
14. They were also iron workers from which spears, arrows, and hoes among others items were produced.
15. They traded with Burundi, Rwanda and Nyamwezi.
16. They carried out crafts where items like Baskets and wooden tools were made.
17. **Socially** Karagwe was divided into two classes, the pastoral Bahima and farmers Banyambo.
18. They royal regalia made up of the drums, spears and arrows.
19. Among the people of Karagwe respect for elders was highly valued.
20. Marriage took place but bride price must follow.
21. They believed in the spirits of their departed ones and sacrifices were offered to appease them.
22. They also believed in medicine men and herbalists for their protection and security.
23. Their main food was milk and millet.

**REASONS FOR THE COLLAPSE OFTHE KINGDOM OF KARAGWE**

1. The Karagwe kingdom declined due political, social and economic factors.
2. Other factors were internal and external in nature.
3. The Kingdom was too large and it became difficult to have it in one piece.
4. The kingdom did not have a strong economy which could be used to uphold it.
5. Weak leaders that came after Ruhinda could also not maintain the large empire hence it crumbled.
6. The conquered states like Nasa, Busubi, and Ihangiro that made the provinces of Karagwe kingdom were not happy about the heavy tributes levied on them. They broke away hence loss of additional revenue.
7. There was external invasion by Bunyoro that also weaken the Kingdom.
8. The chiefs were given too freedom and they failed to hold together as part of the Kingdom. Many therefore broke away.
9. The successors of Ruhinda were so aggressive to the subjects. They therefore caused discontent within the subjects.
10. Succesion disputes among the princess for the control of the Kingdom dismantled the it.
11. There was serious outbreak of epidemics such as small pox and sleeping sickness. The kingdom became weakened and it finally collapsed.
12. Constant civil wars dealt the last blow to Karagwe Kingdom.

**Revision questions**

1. How did Ruhinda establish his control over the Karagwe?
2. What changes did Ruhinda introduce to the people of Karagwe?
3. Describe the political, economic and social organization of Karagwe.
4. Why did Karagwe Kingdom declined after the death of Ruhinda?

**BUNYORO KINGDOM (1350 AND 1500AD)**

**THE FORMATION OR ORIGIN OF BUNYORO**

1. Bunyoro Kingdom was founded by the Chwezi immigrants from the north.
2. It included modern Buganda, Ankole, Busoga, Karagwe, Western Kenya and other areas.
3. Bunyoro’s capital remained at Bigo byamugenyi
4. Bunyoro’s first king was Ndahura and the last was Wamara
5. Bunyoro existed between 1350 and 1500 AD.
6. It was among the first empires to be established within the interlacustrine region
7. Bunyoro area had been originally occupied by the Tembuzi and Chwezi.
8. Bunyoro had greatly dependable leaders as Abakama for example the Omukama Kamurasi who governed it from 1852 -1869, such rulers expanded the Kingdom.
9. Bunyoro had a very strong and dependable army called the Abarusura that expanded and kept law and order in the Kingdom.
10. Bunyoro had fertile soils that favoured agriculture
11. Bunyoro was involved in trade, especially long distance trade that gave her a lot of wealth she used for expansion.
12. Bunyoro’s early contact with the Arabs in long distance trade enabled her to acquire the gun, which she used to expand her Kingdom.
13. Bunyoro’s expansion was made possible by the raids she carried out onto her weak neigbours at the time, for example Nkore, Busoga, and many others.
14. Bunyoro had an efficient centralised administration which led to peace and harmony hence expansion.
15. Bunyoro had weak and disorganised neighbours.
16. Bunyoro acquired tributes from the conquered states that she could use for expansion.
17. Just like Buganda, Bunyoro at first had good relations with the Arabs at the coast.

**SOCIAL, POLITICAL AND ECONOMIC ORGANISATION OF BUNYORO**

1. **Socially** Banyoro believed in a supreme being known as Ruhanga, the creator of all things.
2. The Society was divided on class basis, that is to say the Biito were rulers whereas the Bahiru were subjects.
3. The Banyoro Enjoyed story telling, music and dancing.
4. Clan heads were highly respected.
5. Clan heads could settle family disputes peacefully.
6. **Politically** the Kingdom of Bunyoro was centralized.
7. The Omukama (political head) was the overall person; he could settle public issues, private as well as domestic affairs, where the clan heads had failed.
8. The Omukama had absolute powers in his Kingdom and as such he could appoint and dismiss officials at will.
9. The kingdom was not administered wholesomely, but it was divided into provinces and countries for easy administration.
10. In the different provinces, chiefs were installed and they administered on behalf of the Omukama.
11. The chiefs were responsible for the tax collection within their respective provinces.
12. During the period of Kabalega Bunyoro was blessed by formation of standing army called Abarusura.
13. The army had the duty of defending the Kingdom against any external and internal attacks.
14. **Economically** the Kingdom of Bunyoro carried out fishing.
15. The Banyoro were involved in trade more especially long distance trade.
16. Bark cloth making was also carried out but on a small scale.
17. Salt mining was yet another important economic activity among the Banyoro.
18. The Nyoro peasants were involved in cultivation of crops like millet.
19. The rearing of cattle was also an important economic activity in the Kingdom.
20. Banyoro were involved in pottery as a means of survival.
21. Tributary states like Buganda, Acholi, Busoga and others provided revenue as a sign of obedience or loyalty to the Omukama.

**BUNYORO KITARA’S RELATIONSHIP WITH HER NEIGHBOURS UP TO 1850**

1. Bunyoro came up when Bunyoro-Kitara broke up.
2. It then started attacking the neighbouring states.
3. The neighbours were Buganda, Busoga, Ankole, Karagwe, Lango and West Nile.
4. Most of her neighbours like Tooro, Ankole, and Busoga among others would be raided.
5. Subsequently Bunyoro’s raids made her territories to expand to cover many areas.
6. Afterwards the raids made Bunyoro to lose much territory and political control to some of her powerful neighbours.
7. Buganda, for example defeated Bunyoro when she was raided. Bunyoro in the process lost some of her territories.
8. Karagwe also defeated Bunyoro when Bunyoro attacked her in 1650.
9. Buddu was acquired from Bunyoro by the Kabaka of Buganda Junju. This was in the 18th Century.
10. Bunyoro tried to raid Ankole in the 18th Century but she was defeated.
11. In the process of attacking Ankole, she lost her territory South of Katanga.
12. Most of the territories of Bunyoro were lost to Buganda, for example Kooki, Mawogola and parts of Ankole.
13. Bunyoro and Tooro were enemies. The relationship between the two was very poor, especially after 1830.
14. However, Bunyoro traded with the Acholi, Alur, Langi, Buganda and Iteso.
15. To help Bunyoro to fight, she would recruit mercenaries from among the Langi, Iteso and Acholi.
16. Bunyoro intermarried with the Acholi, Langi and Alur.
17. Bunyoro resumed her hostilities later against her neighbours especially Buganda and Tooro when the British colonialists came to East Africa. She was later defeated completely.

**FACTORS FOR THE COLLAPSE OF BUNYORO KINGDOM**

1. Bunyoro Kitara was able to collapse because of internal and external factors
2. The factors were also political, social and economic in nature.
3. The kingdom was too big for effective administration that is to say, she controlled part of Nkore, Buganda, Busoga and others.
4. There was the growth of neighbours that was very steady, for example Bunyoro lost Singo and Buddu to Buganda.
5. Weak leaders and poor administrative policies like that of Kamurasi inspired conquered states to break away.
6. Revolts and rebellions from several Nyoro princesses, for example Kaboyo broke away and formed Toro Kingdom.
7. Divisionism or disunity with in the Bunyoro society, for example Biito against Bahiru.
8. Bunyoro’s army with time became too weak and unable to guard the Kingdom.
9. Succession disputes wit in the Kingdom led to its collapse.
10. Natural calamities like diseases and famine also led to the decline.
11. The Arab’s activity of supplying fire arms to Buganda made Buganda a strong competitor politically against Bunyoro. She finally overran Bunyoro.

**Sample questions**

1. Describe the formation of Bunyoro Kingdom.
2. Describe the rise of Bunyoro – Kitara Kingdom.
3. Describe the social, political and economic organization of Bunyoro Kitara.
4. Describe the relationship between Bunyoro and her neighbours.
5. What led to the collapse of Bunyoro Kingdom?

**BUGANDA KINGDOM (1500-1900)**

**THE ORIGINS OF BUGANDA KINGDOM**

1. The Buganda Kingdom was one of the so many states around Lake Victoria and it was for the Ganda community, it was founded by Kintu.
2. The Origins of Buganda kingdom are not very clear.
3. Some Ganda traditions say it was founded by Kintu, who came from the direction of Mt. Elgon. About 13 - 14 clans are believed to belong to his group.
4. The Nyoro traditions say it was founded by Kato- Kimera, a twin brother of Isingoma Rukidi Mpuga.
5. Other historians say that Buganda was founded by Bantu from Ssese Island.
6. There are arguments that Buganda was originally part of the Chwezi Empire and that she was among the many Kingdoms that broke away from the Chwezi Empire.
7. It is still believed that Kimera created Buganda from Bunyoro and that he came with 6 clans.
8. Never the less, there is another school of thought that claims that they are the original Baganda and that, the Chwezi and Nyoro found them already settled.
9. Buganda started from a very small nucleus that only had Busiro Mawokota and Kyadondo in around 1500.
10. By 1800, Buganda was one of the biggest Kingdoms in the interlacustrine region.
11. The kingdom got established in the North-West of Lake Victoria and the East of Bunyoro Kingdom.

**FACTORS FOR THE RISE AND EXPANSION OF BUGANDA BETWEEN THE 18TH AND 19TH CENTURIES**

1. Buganda Kingdom started as a small and compact state that was very easy to administer and control, hence rise and expansion.
2. The highly centralized and efficient system of government with the King as the Kabaka, was one of the factors for Buganda’s rise and expansion.
3. Buganda had a very strong and dependable army that expanded the Kingdom and protected its integrity.
4. Buganda controlled and participated in the long distance trade as a chief supplier of bark cloth, this gave her much revenue necessary for expansion.
5. Buganda was lucky to have disorganised neighbours whom she easily conquered.
6. Buganda had very strong leaders like Junju, Semakokiiro, Mawanda and others who expanded Buganda.
7. Buganda had very rich and fertile soils that favoured agriculture.
8. The conquered states provided Buganda with tributes, ivory and slaves.
9. The fall of Bunyoro which had been a strong Kingdom, left a power vacuum in the region that Buganda filled.
10. Buganda had a clear succession policy; that is to say the King named his successor and hence this avoided succession disputes.
11. Hospitality of the people within Buganda led to the rise and expansion of the kingdom. They welcomed and absorbed foreigners into their society.
12. Buganda had natural barriers to the South, that is to say Lake Victoria hence it was not easy to attack her.
13. Buganda established a friendly relationship with the Arabs at the coast at quite an early stage. The Arabs availed Buganda with guns that were used to protect and expand the Kingdom.
14. Buganda had an efficient navy or water force that assisted the ground forces.
15. Division of labour within the empire. Among the Baganda, women cultivated food while men could defend the Kingdom.
16. Buganda developed through raiding her neighbours.
17. The Kabaka married from different clans and this led to unity within since the Kabaka was related to almost everybody in the Kingdom, hence reducing civil wars.
18. Buganda had a good climate favourable for human settlement and agriculture.

**SOCIAL, POLITICAL AND ECONOMIC ORGANISATION OF BUGANDA BEFORE 1800AD**

1. **Socially** Buganda society was divided, into classes: On top were the Balangira (royal family), Bataka (land lords)**,** Bakopi (Peasants)and the Bagalagala (who were slaves and war captives).
2. The royal family was the most privileged as they had a lot of land.
3. The clan was an important social unit in Buganda
4. Each clan had its own totem (Muziro) and so, it was a taboo for one to eat his or her totem. The major totems were: lung-fish was for the Mamba clan, lion for the Mpologoma clan**,** edible rat was the Omusu clan**,** and antelope for the Empeewo clan, Enjovu clan had the elephant as a totem and others.
5. It’s important to observe that each of the above clans had its head known as “Omukulu wa ekika”. Currently there are 52 clans in Buganda.
6. Much respect and loyalty was given to the clan heads.
7. Elders were also accorded much respect in society
8. The drums were important as an entertainment object and also were sounded to call people for any communal work.
9. Baganda believed in small gods namely; Dungu for hunting, Musoke for rainfall, Walumbe for death and so on.
10. Buganda heavily and strongly believed in witchcraft, where the “Abalogo” witch doctors were usually consulted, respected and feared.
11. However, the Baganda believed ina super-natural being, that is to say Katonda (a god) though in a different perception.
12. Polygamy was widely practiced by Baganda, where even the Kabaka had many wives.
13. The children were taken over by the father’s side, whose clan they overtook.
14. Sexual relations among close relatives were greatly discouraged. Members of the same clan were not allowed to marry.
15. Baganda dressed in bark cloth, beads and so on. Members of the royal family wore skins of animals like leopards and goats but, later as the Arabs came into Buganda, they started wearing clothes.
16. **Economically** Buganda was involved in trade, for example in the long distance trade, she supplied bark cloth in exchange for guns, cloth and other items.
17. Iron working was also important and iron implements like pangas, axes*,* and hoes were made.
18. Bark cloth making was indeed an important economic activity.
19. Agriculture was the most important economic activity, where crops like yams, cassava and bananas were grown.
20. Hunting was also carried out among the Baganda.
21. Fishing was carried out especially along the shores of Lake Victoria, Ssese Island and other areas.
22. Land was at first owned communally but the Kabaka had supreme rights overland. It’s no wonder he was called “Ssabataka” which title somehow was related to land.
23. Division of labour existed in Buganda’s economic set up, for example men hunted, carried out fishing and other activities whereas women cultivated.
24. Craft industry too, was important where mats and beads were developed.
25. Taxation was an important source of revenue, taxes were collected by chiefs.
26. Buganda raided her neighbours too for goods like salt, slaves, cattle and so on.
27. **Politically** the Kingdom was highly centralised and headed by the Kabaka (King).
28. The Kabaka had a lot of authority, that is to say he could appoint and dismiss his chiefs at will.
29. The Kabaka was assisted by chiefs in the administration of the Kingdom.
30. Below the Kabaka were the following officials: Chief justice - “The Omulamuzi”, Chief Minister - “Katikiro”, Treasurer - “The Omuwanika”, parish chiefs - “Ab’emiluka”, nobles - ‘Abakungu” among others.
31. All the above officials assisted the Kabaka in different political roles within the Kingdom.
32. Buganda had a legislative council, that is to say “The Lukiiko” made up of clan heads and other officials and its main work was to make laws and even to offer advice to the Kabaka and his officials.
33. The Kingdom had a standing army to get law breakers and to defend the Kingdom against intruders.
34. The “Namasole” or the Queen mother acted as an important adviser to the king.
35. The Kabaka could reward his officials with gifts especially when they had done good work; this ensured hard work and loyalty to the King.
36. The Kabaka was the commander in chief of the Buganda forces. In other words he was the Supreme millitary1eader.
37. Kingship was hereditary hence no succession disputes.
38. Conquered provinces were administered by personalities appointed by the Kabaka.
39. Everything in Buganda kingdom belonged to the Kabaka, for example women, land and so on.

**BUGANDA’S RELATIONSHIP WITH HER NEIGHBOURS**

1. Buganda’s neighbours included Bunyoro, Busoga, Ankole, and Tooro.
2. Her relationship with her neighbours was friendly and tense with others.
3. Buganda traded with most of her neighbours.
4. She would supply iron implements to Bunyoro and receive salt in exchange.
5. Much as Buganda traded with Bunyoro very poor relationship existed between the two communities.
6. In the wars that existed between the two, Bunyoro lost Kooki, Buddu, Mawoogola, Buruuli, and Bulemeezi to Buganda.
7. On the eastern side of Buganda, Busoga was taken over during the reign of Kabaka Kyabagu.
8. Kabaka Junju took over Kooki.
9. A number of raids would be carried by Buganda against Bunyoro, Busoga, Tooro and Ankole among others.
10. The Lake Victoria Islands of Ruvuma, Kalangala and Ukererwe were always attacked by Buganda.
11. Buganda would also extend her raids to Western Kenya.
12. Whenever raids were carried out by Buganda, the conquered states like Kooki would not be attacked.
13. Raids aimed at acquiring Slaves, ivory, women and cattle together with grains.
14. Buganda also intermarried with neighbours like Busoga and Bunyoro.
15. Conquered states provided youth to form part of Buganda’s army.

**Sample questions**

1. What are the origins of Buganda Kingdom?
2. Why was Buganda able to develop and expand?
3. Describe the social, political and economic organisation of Buganda Kingdom.
4. How was Buganda’s relationship with her neighbours?

**ANKOLE KINGDOM**

**POLITICAL, SOCIAL AND ECONOMIC ORGANIZATION OF ANKOLE KINGDOM**

1. **Politically** the founders of the Ankole Kingdom were descendants of Chwezi from Bahinda clan in about 1370A.D.
2. It was one of the many states that made up the Bunyoro - Kitara Empire.
3. The kingdom was1ocated in south-western Uganda.
4. At first, Ankole was named “Karo karungi” meaning peaceful land.
5. Historians believe, that when the Chwezi were sent further to the south Rukidi Mpuga who was Wamara’s son remained behind and tried to consolidate or bring together his fathers territory.
6. It started as a very small chiefdom made up of only Rwampara in around 1400.
7. It expanded during the period of Omugabe Ntare IV, who took over Kabula after which he was re-named “Kittabanyoro” because he had killed and fought Bunyoro to get Kabula.
8. Other leaders who expanded Ankole included Omugabe Nkutambuka who conquered Igara, Buhweju, and Mpororo among others.
9. Ankole’s strength was however checked and given a death blow by the European imperialists, the British in 1901 when the kingdom was dissolved.
10. **Socially** the Society was divided into classes, that is to say, the King, Bahima and Bairu as the lowest.
11. Social status was measured by the number of cattle a person had.
12. They had blood brotherhood ties, that is to say “Omukago” where people who had done the above could vow to be friends till death.
13. The Ankole people believed in life after death.
14. They also believed in ancestral worship.
15. They believed in a supernatural being known as “Ruhanga”
16. The Banyankole offered sacrifices to their small gods like Kagoro, Katooba and many others.
17. Marriage and sexual relations between the Bairu and Bahima were highly not permitted.
18. The Ankole people highly believed that the spirits of the dead could affect those who were alive. So, sacrifices like beer, milk were given to them.
19. **Economically** the Ankole people were involved in trade especially long distance trade, where they supplied goods like pots, hides and skins among other goods.
20. Iron working was carried out. Spears, arrows head and other implements were made.
21. Keeping of cattle was the most important economic activity among the Ankole people. They kept long horned cattle.
22. They were skilled in crafts making and they made items like baskets and mats among others.
23. The lower class, the Bairu carried out some cultivation of crops like millet.
24. They practiced shifting cultivation and nomadic pastoralism.
25. The King called Omugabe had powers over economic activities.
26. The Nkore also had carpentry as an important economic activity important.
27. **Politically** the Ankole people first settled at Isingi and later transferred to Mbarara.
28. They had a Centralised state under the Omugabe.
29. He had absolute powers.
30. The Ankole kingdom was divided into provinces that included places like: Mitooma, Isingiro, Rwampara, Nyabushozi, Kashaali, and Igara among others.
31. The Omugabe was believed to have divine powers.
32. Among the Nkore, only Bahima produced the Omugabe.
33. Omugabe was assisted by chiefs.
34. Military leaders called emitwe were very important.
35. The Empire was united together by symbols of authority like spear and so on.
36. Had a Prime minister known as “Enganzi” who always moved with the king.
37. Ankole had no standing army but in times of trouble, all able bodied men were supposed to assemble and plan to fight the enemy.

**Revision question**Describe the social, political and economic organisation of Ankole society.

**CHAPTER 9**

**PRE-COLONIAL SOCIETIES IN EAST AFRICA**

**PRE-COLONIAL SOCIETIES IN UGANDA**

**THE ITESO SOCIETY**

**POLITICAL, SOCIAL AND ECONOMIC ORGANIZATION OF THE ITESO**

1. The Iteso migrated from Karamoja to the region of Salisbury, particularly   
   Kumi and Soroti in Usuku.
2. Iteso belonged to the Plain Nilotes group.
3. It is believed that they came from Ethiopia.
4. They first settled in Karamoja, where they lived with the Karamoja, but due to overpopulation and other related factors, they migrated further inland into Uganda.
5. They finally settled in Kumi and Soroti areas from where they got the name “Iteso”.
6. Currently, they are found in Kumi, Mbale, Amuria, Kaberamaido, Katakwi and other parts of Kenya.
7. **Politically** they were established society but they had no centralised administration. It was therefore asegmentary society.
8. Had clans as their important political units. They called them “Ateker”.
9. Their clans were made up of many extended families.
10. Several clans combined in an administrative council called “Eitela”
11. The Iteso had no standing army but it could be organised in need.
12. Military commanders like Ogutu, Oruwon Emilu, and Maliry were important.
13. Chiefs called Emurimor were always very important and they performed political as well as social obligations like rain making.
14. Clan meetings were often called to discuss important issues that is to say “Etem” social organisation of the Iteso.
15. **Socially** among the Iteso, Age set called “Aturi” that consisted of people of same age were important.
16. Members of the same origin, backgrounds and ancestral origin treated themselves as brothers and sisters hence a high sense of unity was created.
17. Children were not allowed to eat before elders, that is to say elders were highly respected by the young ones.
18. The Emuron acted as not only a spiritual but also as a religious leader in society, as such, he offered sacrifice on behalf of his subjects.
19. Marriage and birth ceremonies were always organised among the Iteso and these greatly led to unity within the society.
20. Iteso had a lot of socialisation and togetherness exemplified by doing things like fishing, hunting and so on together.
21. Emurons (divine leaders) could foretell danger like famine, drought, etc.
22. Penalty for theft was death.
23. Hardworking members in society were rewarded
24. Men could marry more than one wife. The Iteso therefore practised polygamy.
25. They believed in a super-natural being but this super-natural being was worshiped through mediators like “Apa” the god of peace, “Edeke” the god for calamities and so on.
26. **Economically** fishing was carried out among the Iteso.
27. Crafts for domestic and trade purposes were also important.
28. Hunting too was important and supplemented food.
29. Cattle were used for food, bride price and horns for music instrument.
30. They Iteso traded across other tribes like Acholi.
31. They carried out subsistence agriculture where millet, sorghum, ground nuts and simsim among others were grown.
32. Pottery and woodwork too were important.
33. Sowing and planting were done by women whereas men cleared the lands hence specialization.
34. Pastoralism was carried out where cattle, goats, and other animals were kept.

**THE KARAMOJONG SOCIETY**

**THE POLITICAL, ECONOMIC AND SOCIAL ORGANISATION OF THE KARAMOJONG SOCIETY**

1. Politically the Karamojong belonged to plain Nilotes group.
2. It is believed that the Karamojong came from Ethiopia during the 15th century.
3. They were closely related to the Iteso, Turkana, Masai and Kumam.
4. Their tradition indicates that during the migration of the Plain Nilotes from Ethiopia, they reached the mount Moroto areas and the old people, “Mojong” who could not move any more decided to stay here hence the word “Kara”. They became known as “Kara Mojong” meaning the “old people stayed”.
5. They Karamojong were also on the move and therefore they did not have any form of political organisation.
6. Their political issues were handled by the elders within the society.
7. Political issues were handled by only men.
8. War among the Karamojong was highly valued. Success in battles improved one’s status.
9. The Karamojong carried out mock fights to ensure mastery of war.
10. During the initiation of the youth into adulthood, they taught them how to use spears, arrows and shields.
11. Sometimes a youth was confirmed a man after killing a lion. He was considered very brave.
12. To increase on the number of animals, the Karamojong carried out raids.
13. They fought their neighbours like the Turkana and Iteso.
14. The Karamojong had no standing army. Warriors were organised any time incase of any external invasion.
15. The basic political unit was the clan.
16. **Economically** the main activity of the Karamojong was cattle keeping.
17. Raids were always carried out with their neighbours for cattle. The Karamojong believed that all the cattle in the world were theirs.
18. They grew crops seldomly, for example cassava and sorghum were planted.
19. They also occasionally carried out trade with their neighbours like the Iteso.
20. They made shoes and clothes out of the animal skins.
21. The Karamojong lived on their animal meat, milk, hides and blood which they extracted from their animals.
22. Women among the Karamojong milked cows.
23. They constructed heavy thorn enclosures to protect their animals from external attacks like raids and Lions.
24. They carried out craft works where stools, ropes and wooden utensils were made for domestic use and for sale.
25. The poor Karamojong offered themselves as domestic servants to the Iteso and Langi.
26. Of late the Karamojong are involved in local gold mining and selling.
27. **Socially** the Karamojong highly believed in ancestral spirits.
28. Before going for war, the Karamojong offered sacrifices and prayed to their spirits.
29. The youth underwent military training before during initiation.
30. It was social obligation for the youth to carry out raids for animals, especially cattle. This was done after mastery of the skills of how to fight using spears, arrows and shield.
31. The Karamojong believed in a god the creator. They referred to him as “Akuj Papa”.
32. The major food of the Karamojong was meat, milk, blood, cassava and sorghum.
33. Marriage was carried out but one was to part with hundred herds of cattle to the family of the girl.
34. Beer parties were organised as a social function. They made their beer from sorghum.
35. The Karamojong highly believed in witchcrafts and they practiced it, for example they smeared their spears with poison so that a slight touch on it was enough to kill someone.
36. Much of the domestic work among the Karamojong was carried out by women.
37. Wealthy homes were enclosed by thorny bushes to protect animals from wild animals and external invaders.
38. They had temporary homes because they were mobile. These were built from branches and grass.

**Revision questions**

Describe the social, political and economic organisation of the Iteso.

How were the Karamojong society organised politically, socially and economically?

**THE ACHOLI SOCIETY**

**POLITICAL, SOCIAL AND ECONOMIC ORGANIZATION OF THE ACHOLI SOCIETY**

1. **Politically** the Acholi were part of the Luo speaking people who moved from Bahr el Ghazel in Southern Sudan.
2. The Acholi emerged as a result of intermarriage between the Luo group that moved away from Pubungu and went Eastwards under the leadership of Labongo and settled among the Sudanic Madi in the present day Acholi land and intermarried with them producing the Acholi.
3. The Acholi had chieftaincies with leaders or chiefs called “Rwot” who ruled them.
4. Each of the chieftaincies was independent but had the same system of leadership.
5. The chiefs were assisted by village chiefs called “Jago” whom they appointed by themselves and fire at will.
6. The “Jago” had the responsibilities of collecting taxes.
7. They also maintained security within their areas of jurisdiction.
8. Among the Acholi political divisions, a family was the smallest and basic political unit.
9. Each of the chiefs was assisted by a council of elders who offered pieces of advice of how to handle the chieftaincy.
10. Elders also assisted in maintaining law, order and peace in the society.
11. The Acholi did not have a readily available army but incase of any attack, young energetic men would be mobilized to defend the clan.
12. **Economically** the Acholi kept animals especially cattle, goats, sheep and poultry.
13. Land among the Acholi was communally owned. It belonged to the clan who distributed to the members.
14. They grew crops like millet, sorghum, cassava, peas, groundnuts, simsim and bananas.
15. Women among the Acholi cultivated while men went out hunting and cleared new land for cultivation.
16. The Acholi also carried out hunting as part of their economic activities.
17. Fishing was also carried out to supplement their diet.
18. They traded with their neighbours like the Langi and Sudanese tribes in Sudan.
19. Taxes and tributes were collected from the subjects by the “Jago” for the “Rwot”.
20. Local crafts like mats, hats, drums, pots, stools, bowls and many others were made among the Acholi for sale and domestic use.
21. **Socially** different clans belonging to different ancestries.
22. Among the Acholi the family was the smallest and basic unit.
23. The head of each family was charged with the responsibility of disciplining the members incase of wrong doing.
24. The Acholi believed in one supreme God called “Lubaanga”.
25. They feared evil spirits called “Jogi”or “Jo- achen” whom they accused of bringing disorder like sicknesses, mental instability among others.
26. “Rwot” played a big role as spiritual leader among the Acholi community.
27. Sacrifices were offered to appease the spirits of departed dear ones.
28. The youth were organised into age groups to have them ready for various political and social functions.
29. Marriage took place at puberty. All grown up youth were encouraged to marry and bride price was a must to the girl’s family.
30. The Acholi totally discouraged sexual immorality.
31. The Acholi respected animals because they believed that it was the ancestors who had returned.

**Revision question**How were the Acholi organised during the 18th and 19th century?

**THE LANGI SOCIETY**

**POLITICAL, SOCIAL AND ECONOMIC ORGANIZATION OF THE LANGI SOCIETY**

1. **Politically** the Langi were not part of the main River-lake Nilotes or the Luo migrants who settled into East Africa.
2. They emerged out of intermarriage and influence from the Luo migrants and the Ateker speaking who were part of the Karamojong and the Iteso who separated from the areas of Mount Moroto in the present day Moroto District.
3. The Ateker moved as far as Mount Otuke where they were met by the Luo migrants who influenced them and others intermarried with them to give rise to the Langi.
4. The Langi were organised into small political units based on clans called “Ateker” made up of members of the same descent.
5. A clan could cover as wide as two or more villages. The biggest clan would dominate the small ones.
6. Each clan had its own leader called “Jago Atekere”.
7. The most powerful and dominant clan provided the Paramount chief called “ Won Nyaci” who exercised a lot of influence over the rest of the clans and villages.
8. The Langi were warriors who raided and caused constantly conflicts against their neighbours.
9. The Langi did not have a standing army but incase of external attacks, all the clans could raise young energetic men to form warriors and face the enemies.
10. **Economically** the Langiwere a pastoral society who kept animals such as cows, goats, sheep and poultry.
11. They were also good at farming. They grew crops like millet and sorghum for both food and brewing beer called “Kongo ting”.
12. The Langi carried out hunting where wild animals were killed for their meat. Animals like elephant were hunted for ivory for sale in addition to providing meat.
13. They also traded with their neighbours like the Acholi and Banyoro.
14. Raids were also carried out to provide more wealth. They raided neighbours like the Madi in west Nile and Banyoro from whom they obtained slaves, cattle, goats and sheep.
15. The Langi carried out taxation especially among the traders who passed through their land like the Arabs. This was done as a source for more wealth.
16. The Langi were also iron workers from which they made iron tools and implements like spears, arrows, hoes, axes among others.
17. Land among the Luo was communally owned although each members knew what belonged to them. The responsibility of how to shared land lay on the clan leaders and the elders.
18. Communal work was also emphasized especially during the periods of planting and harvesting of crops
19. **Socially** the Langi were organised into small political units based on clans called “Atekere” made up of members of the same ancestry.
20. The Langi lived in communities or settlements comprising of 50 – 100 people for security reasons.
21. At fire places in the evening, elders guided the young ones on social behaviors of the society for peaceful existence.
22. Communal works were common among the Langi for faster and effective working.
23. The Langi also believed in the supreme God called “Obanga”.
24. There also existed diviners who healed the sick, made rain, interpreted death, and also could make barren women conceive.
25. Their emblem was a rhinoceros called “Amuka”.
26. Music and dance festivals were frequently organised for social celebration and entertainments. This was majorly during dry seasons when work had subsided.

**Revision question**Describe the political, social and economic organization of the Langi

**PRE-COLONIAL SOCIETIES IN TANGANYIKA**

**NYAMWEZI SOCIETY**

**ORIGIN OF THE NYAMWEZI SOCIETY**

1. The word “Nyamwezi” means the “people of the moon”.
2. The name was given to them by the coastal Arabs because they, the Nyamwezi approached East Africa from the direction where the new moon appears.
3. The Nyamwezi occupied the central Tanzania plateau.
4. They were part of Western and central Tanzania Bantu.
5. They were initially cultivators, cattle keepers and fishermen.
6. In the 19thcentury, they became long distance traders as middle men.
7. They provide a good example of the segmentary society.

**POLITICAL, SOCIAL AND ECONOMIC ORGANIZATION OF THE NYAMWEZI SOCIETY**

1. **Politically** the Nyamwezi lived in small independent and much chiefdom. They had no central authority.
2. Different chiefdoms were independent from one another.
3. Chiefdoms were ruled over by “Ntemi” chiefs.
4. Each chiefdom had around 1000 people under a given “Ntemi” chief.
5. The position of the “Ntemi” chief was hereditary, so, he was succeeded by his close relative like a son.
6. The chiefs (Ntemi) were assisted by a group of elders called Wanyampala.
7. The chief elder who helped the “Ntemi” was called”Mgawe” and the army leader was called “Watwale”.
8. Below those officials still were other officials namely: Revenue officer “Minile” and information officer - “Kikoma”
9. It’s interesting to observe that the different chiefdoms had different army commanders appointed by Ntemi.
10. It must also be observed that though historically the Nyamwezi were not centralized, when powerful leaders like Mirambo assumed leadership, they formed a centralized political unit.
11. **Socially** Ntemi’s health affected society that is to say if he fell sick, society was affected.
12. Regular sacrifices were offered to appease ancestors.
13. The Ntemi was the spiritual as well as religious leader among the Nyamwezi.
14. Spirits of ancestors were highly respected.
15. Ntemi could marry many women.
16. It was believed that “Ntemi” had the power to avert calamity.
17. Ceremonies like marriage and initiation were highly cerebrated among Nyamwezi.
18. Their dressing pattern was highly affected by the Arabic culture, that is to say men put on Kanzus.
19. Marriage among close relatives was highly prohibited.
20. Elders had to be respected in society especially by the youth.
21. **Economically** at first they were farmers, grew millet, sorghum and so no.
22. The Nyamwezi also kept animals like goats, cattle and so on.
23. They also carried out fishing
24. Ntemi kept large herds of cattle.
25. Trading was a very important economic activity carried out by Nyamwezi.
26. By 1800, the Nyamwezi abandoned agriculture and greatly involved in long distance trade as middlemen.
27. Nyamwezi had great control over the central trade route of long distance trade. They taxed all goods that passed through their state from where they got much wealth.
28. They practiced iron smelting, that is to say they made knives, pangas and so on.
29. The Nyamwezi were good at craft making where mats and baskets were made.
30. Fishing was also carried out among the Nyamwezi.
31. Pottery making was also done.
32. Hunting of elephants was another activity; elephants were hunted to provide ivory which had much demand in long distance trade.

**MIRAMBO OF THE NYAMWEZI EMPIRE**

**RISE OF NYAMWEZI EMPIRE UNDER MIRAMBO’S EMPIRE**

1. Mirambo was born in about 1830s.
2. He was tall, muscular, soft spoken and courageous.
3. He grew up to become a charismatic personality.
4. Mirambo spent his early years as a captive of the Tuta-Ngoni in Bugomba in 1840’s.
5. While there, he learnt Ngoni military tactics which he later used to build his empire.
6. Mirambo escaped from military captivity and built a strong army which he called Ruga Ruga, which he later used to expand his father’s territory he had acquired.
7. In his effort to create a powerful Nyamwezi empire, Mirambo inherited the chiefdoms of Uyowa (Ugowe) of his father and annexed it to Uliankuru from his mother’s side.
8. In 1870s, Mirambo extended his dominions by wars with neigbouring people and established his capital at Urambo, named after him.
9. Mirambo later went on expanding his kingdom by conquering the Ha, Irumba, Vinza, Nyatura, Sukuma, Rwanda and Burundi.
10. Mirambo expanded his capital Northwards up to Lake Victoria, westward to Ujiji on lake Tanganyika, eastwards to the Eastern rift Valley, and southwards to lake Rukwa.
11. By 1880s, Mirambo had created a very powerful Nyamwezi empire which was only rivaled by Unyanyembe.

**REASONS FOR MIRAMBO’S SUCCESS** **OR FACTORS THAT LED TO MIRAMBO’S RISE TO POWER**

1. Mirambo was born in about 1830s.
2. He spent his early years as a captive of the Tuta-Ngoni in Bugomba in 1840’s.
3. While there, he learnt Ngoni military tactics which he later used to build his empire.
4. Mirambo was so lucky to survive death and also being sold into slavery by the Ngoni when he was in captivity.
5. Mirambo escaped from military captivity and built a strong army which he called Ruga Ruga, which he later used to expand his father’s territory he had acquired.
6. He later captured the chiefdom of Ugowe of his father, Kasande.
7. Later; Mirambo acquired the chiefdom of Uliankuru from his mother’s side and annexed it to that of his father of Ugowe.
8. During the same period Nyatura, Vinza, Burundi, Rwanda and many others were also captured.
9. Mirambo’s character and personality as a soldier made him succeed.
10. The empire rose because of Mirambo’s strong army called Ruga - Ruga.
11. The Ruga-Ruga had acquired the Ngoni war tactics, cow-horn and also a short stabbing spear called assegai.
12. The Ruga-Ruga included about 500 well trained, well paid and well armed soldiers and 7000 other soldiers.
13. Mirambo personally led his army to battle.
14. Mirambo equipped his army further with guns acquired from the Arab and Swahili traders.
15. Mirambo was rivaled in power by only Unyanyembe.
16. He controlled major trade routes in his country by imposing taxes on traders passing through his area.
17. Conquered people were absorbed into Nyamwezi and recruited into his army.
18. Mirambo’s neighbours were also very weak and disunited. This was a great advantage to Mirambo to expand his kingdom.
19. Conquered girls were married to his soldiers and the districts conquer were placed under his officials.
20. Neighbouring chiefdoms were forced to pay allegiance to Nyamwezi.
21. Mirambo sought respect from those using his territory for example; he closed routes to Arab traders when they refused to pay him taxes.
22. Mirambo was a man of vision who sought friendship of Mutesa I, Msiri and Tipu- Tipu.
23. Mirambo ensured that the empire always had good relations with the Europeans and the Arabs. In fact to this effect, Mirambo allowed the London missionary society to open missions in Nyamwezi.
24. Mirambo ensured good relation too with the Sultan of Zanzibar.
25. The Nyamwezi were friendly and hospitable people and that’s why they even worked as middlemen in long distance trade.
26. Good location that enabled it to even participate in trade.
27. The prevailing peace in central Tanganyika also assisted Mirambo to establish his Kingdom.
28. At the empire was small, and therefore easy to mobilize into a powerful kingdom.
29. It is also argued that the death of his father, the leader of Ugowe, gave him chance to take over leadership of this small chiefdom.
30. Be as it may, Mirambo was a man of unlimited courage and power. He was very determined to establish a powerful empire.

**REASONS FOR THE COLLAPSE OF THE NYAMWEZI EMPIRE AFTER 1884**

1. The empire had no solid foundation. It was much more of a one man’s empire that when he died in 1884, it had to collapse.
2. The empire had very much different and conflicting chiefdoms with different cultures, and organisations hence lacked unity.
3. Mirambo conflicted later with the Arabs over trade.
4. His army, the Ruga Ruga, had become less dependable by 1884. They would even hire their services to other thugs.
5. Mirambo’s administration became dictatorial at a later stage and this caused hatred leading to its collapse.
6. The empire had become too big for effective administration.
7. Mirambo had grown too old and weak and therefore unable to manage his empire successfully.
8. The empire collapsed due to Mirambo’s death in 1880’s, he was behind its success and when he died, that also marked the end of his empire.
9. The advent of colonialism in the area led to collapse of the empire. The Europeans imperialists were determined to bring East Africa under their control and miramb’s empire was not exceptional.
10. Mirambo had personalised the leadership of the Kingdom.
11. Due to Mirambo’s involvement in slave trade, the missionaries had to intervene in his empire leadership which later caused its collapse.
12. Weak successors especially his half brother Mpande Shallo who ruled from 1884-1885 and could not maintained the empire the way Mirambo had done.
13. Local chiefs were given too much power and authority which later enabled them to break off.
14. The empire had civil wars especially when the conquered chiefdoms tried to set themselves free.
15. Mirambo’s neighbours had great jealousy, especially about Nyamwezi’s development; they therefore worked for its collapse.
16. The decline of the long distance trade also contributed greatly to the Nyamwezi empire because there was no more income to be used to motivate the army.

**CONTRIBUTIONS OF MIRAMBO IN THE RE-ORGANIZATION OF NYAMWEZI KINGDOM**

1. Mirambo’s contributions are similar to his achievements.
2. His contributions were social, political and economic in nature.
3. They were also both positive and negative in nature.
4. Mirambo first of all built a small kingdom of Ugowe of his father and later acquired Uliankuru from his mother’s side.
5. He built a powerful army which he called Ruga Ruga for the Nyamwezi kingdom.
6. Mirambo built his capital at Urambo which he named after himself. He then developed it into a powerful city.
7. He promoted raids on the neighbours using his army and got income to develop Nyamwezi Empire.
8. Mirambo absorbed many conquered youth into his army that made it strong.
9. Mirambo expanded the Nyamwezi empire from Ugowe and Uliankuru to the Ha, Irumba, Vinza, Nyatura, Sukuma and other areas.
10. He obtained tributes from his conquered states and used the income to develop his empire.
11. Mirambo encouraged the Nyamwezi people to participate in the Long distance trade from where he got a lot of wealth which he used to expand and develop his empire.
12. He acquired guns and gun powder from the coastal Arabs to defend his kingdom.
13. Mirambo forced all the strangers passing through his territory to recognize him and respect him as a ruler.
14. He promoted agriculture and obtained a lot of food for trade and for home use.
15. Mirambo created peace and unity among the Nyamwezi and this led to development.
16. He also developed friendly relations with the Europeans and his fellow Africans.
17. Mirambo invited the Christian missionaries to his Kingdom and they later assisted him to develop his society.

**Revision questions**

1. What factors led to the rise of Mirambo’s empire?
2. Describe the origin of the Nyamwezi society.
3. Describe the political, social and economic organisation of the Nyamwezi.
4. Howwas Mirambo able to create his empire?
5. Why is Mirambo remembered in the history of the Nyamwezi?
6. What factors led for the collapse of Mirambo’s empire?

**NYUNGU YAMAWE OF UNYANYEMBE**

**WHO NYUNGU YA MAWE WAS AND HOW HE MANAGED TO ESTABLISHED A POWERFUL EMPIRE.**

1. The name NyunguYa mawe was a praise name meaning “pot of stones”
2. NyunguYa mawe was a prince of the Unyanyembe ruling family, but fled in 1865 after the Arabs had beheaded the chief Mnwa sele.
3. NyunguYamawe was highly ruthless, a brilliant general and a clever administrator and it is no wonder that he was among the best leaders of his time.
4. In 1874, he broke away from his own people and created his centre at Kiwele between 1870 and 80.
5. From his centre at Kiwele, Nyungu organised expeditions over most of the Kiambu County east and south of Tabora.
6. Nyungu Yamawe also ensured that the trade route to the coast and other routes which joined Tabora to Ufipa and Lake Tanganyika also came under his control.
7. Nyungu Yamawe unlike Mirambo formed a strong and centralised administration.
8. He placed his own rulers Vatwale over conquered chiefdoms and they were   
   directly responsible to him. He gave no political or ritual power to the conquered state.
9. Nyungu Yamawe as a ruler took over the collection of ivory and valuable trading commodity from the conquered chiefs.
10. His nephew Nzwala Mino ga Vanhu was the most important of his Watwale.
11. He divided his kingdom into six to seven administrative units each under a Mutwale.
12. These units or divisions cut across the borders of the thirty old chiefdoms and this strengthened his centralised administration.
13. Nyungu Yamawe‘s soldiers (mercenaries) were very disciplined because they were given physical and psychological training.
14. The soldiers were brave professionals and ruthless in battle.
15. Nyungu Yamawe himself was fearless and did not hesitate to risk his own life.
16. By 1871, Nyungu Yamawe was raiding south of Unyanyembe.
17. In 1875, he captured the Nanzi chiefdoms of Kirurumo and Kiwele chiefdom in   
    central Ukiambu.
18. When his famous one eyed warrior died in December 1884, he had conquered   
    south east Ukonongo.
19. Nyungu Yamawe’s empire survived longer than Mirambo’s, although Mirambo’s was better known.
20. Nyungu Yamawe’s daughter ruled when he died and when she died in 1893 her daughter ruled equally successfully.
21. It was not until the Germans came to Kiwele in 1895 that the great empire created by Nyungu Yamawe began to collapse.

**Revision questions**

1. Who was Nyungu Yamawe?
2. How was Nyungu Yamawe able to construct his empire?

**THE CHAGGA SOCIETY**

**POLITICAL, SOCIAL AND ECONOMIC ORGANIZATION OF THE CHAGGA SOCIETY**

1. **Politicall**y the Chagga belonged to the coastal and highland or Eastern Bantu who settled on the slopes of Mountain Kilimanjaro in present day Tanzania.
2. The Chagga had a decentralized society. They were organised into several chiefdoms led by chiefs called Ntemi.
3. Chiefdoms were independent and they handled their own political affairs.
4. Ntemi was the highest position of leadership among the Chagga people.
5. The Ntemi were assisted by senior chiefs who formed council of advisors and supervisors.
6. The Chagga had a chief justice whose responsibility was to solve civil and criminal offences.
7. Some Chagga chiefdoms had well equipped stronghold for defense, for example there was one at Kibosho under Chief Sina.
8. The clan members gave tributes and gifts to the chiefs as appreciation for work well done.
9. The Chagga had well organised army for defense.
10. Chiefs among the Chagga carried out political, religious and social functions.
11. **Economically** the Chagga were farmers who grew crops like millet and bananas for their domestic use.
12. They also kept animals like cattle for food and exchange during trade.
13. They practiced Zero grazing of animals.
14. They participated in the long distance trade and exchanged ivory, slaves, foodstuffs among others with guns and beads from among the Arabs.
15. Trading centres like Kilama and Machame existed as collection centres for the traders of the long distance trade.
16. They practiced crop rotation on their farms.
17. They carried out irrigation on their farms during the period of drought.
18. They made shoes and cloth from the skin of their animals.
19. The Chagga were iron workers who manufactured spears, arrows, pangas, axes and hoes among others.
20. The chiefs lived a high level life because they got tributes from their subjects, traders and farmers.
21. Land was owned individually and this made their farms fragmented.
22. They carried out pottery where pots and domestic utensils were made.
23. Socially the Chagga believed in their god called “Ruwa” whose powers included protection of the Chagga.
24. The Chagga chiefs served as both political and religious leaders.
25. They Chagga highly believed in their ancestral spirits because they discovered that blessings came from them.
26. The chief got a wife from each clan and the son would provide the mother’s clan with a leader.
27. The Chagga valued marriage but this would be accompanied by bride price to the girl’s parent as gift for appreciation.
28. Initiation of the youth into warriors would be done during the harvest time when there was plenty of food for celebration.
29. It was mandatory among the youth to respect elders for their wisdom. Elders played the role of guiding the youth and advising them.

**Revision question**Describe the social, economic and political organisation of the Chagga society during the 19th century.

Why are the Chagga remembered in the History of East Africa?

**THE MASAI SOCIETY**

**POLITICAL, SOCIAL AND ECONOMIC ORGANIZATION OF THE MASAI SOCIETY**

1. **Politically** it is probable that the Masai shared a common ancestry with the Kalenjin to the north of Lake Turkana. They moved southwards to the Uasin Gishu Plateau.
2. The Masai moved from the area west of Lake Turkana in about the 17th century.
3. The clan was the basis of political power.
4. Each clan had its own name and cattle brand.
5. Leadership was exercised through the age set system.
6. The most active age set was the **Moran o**r the junior warrior group.
7. The junior warrior group was led by a captain called Olaiguani.
8. The Elders administered the clan or a group of clans.
9. Elders also maintained law and order.
10. From the mid 19th century, the Laibon became the centre of political power.
11. The society was totally decentralised.
12. Once elected, the Olaigvani (captain) was presented with a ceremonial club “Oriaikha” to symbolise his status.
13. **Socially** a young man became mature after circumcision which was done at 18 years.
14. Successful raiding was a sign of social success and prestige.
15. The Masai believed in a supreme being (Enkai).
16. Supreme Being was the source of life and punished bad people.
17. Senior elders helped to organise society especially during difficult periods.
18. The “Laibon” prayed to the” Enkai” on behalf of the people.
19. Women and children were the lowest members of the society.
20. The warrior class “Moran” defended the home land.
21. **Economically** warriors conducted raids and surveyed areas for grazing.
22. The “Purko” Masai were pastoralists.
23. The Masai kept cattle, sheep, goats and so on.
24. The “Iloikop” Masai were cultivators.
25. They grew crops like Sorghum, finger millet and so on.
26. Masai traded, for example in hides and skins, pots, honey and so on.
27. They were iron workers, smelted iron and made items like spears, ornaments, and so on.
28. The Masai carried out some fishing.
29. The Masai made honey wine.
30. Men herded cattle and women milked them
31. Women did the marketing of goods.

**Revision question**Describe the social, economic and political organisation of the Masai society.

**PRE-COLONIAL SOCIETIES IN KENYA**

**THE KENYAN LUO SOCIETY**

**POLITICAL, SOCIAL AND ECONOMIC ORGANIZATION OF THE KENYAN LUO SOCIETY**

1. **Politically** the Kenyan Luo were part of the River-Lake Nilotes or “Jo Nam” who migrated from Bahr-el-Ghazel in Southern Sudan.
2. When they arrived in Kenya they mostly settled in the Nyanza province.
3. The Kenyan Luo did not have any centralized administration. Their leadership rotated around “ Rwot”, the paramount chief.
4. The position of “Rwot” was taken by the best fighter or someone with the best military power.
5. The Luo were divided into a number of smaller clans forming political units called Oganda each under the leadership of smaller chiefs called Rwoth.
6. Below the overall chief, “Rwot” was a council of elders from all the major clans among the Luo called “Lodito” who played advisory role to the Chief.
7. Council of elders among the Luo also settled disputes and followed up criminal cases.
8. Within each clan there were also clan councils who iron out cases within their respective clans.
9. The basic social unit among the Kenyan Luo was the family which was headed by the Father.
10. **Economically** the Kenyan Luo kept animals like cattle, goats, sheep and poultry.
11. The animals were kept for payment of bride price, meat, milk, hides and skin for making cloth, and others were kept for prestige.
12. It was men and children who milked cows.
13. Raids were conducted on the neighbours where animals and women were taken.
14. The Kenyan Luo practiced agriculture. The growing of crops like millet, sorghum, maize, groundnuts, simsim, sweet potatoes, tobacco and bananas among others was carried out.
15. Among the Luo of Kenya, pottery was practiced. Beautiful pots and other utensils were made out of clay.
16. Crafts were also carried out where beautiful baskets, mats and hats were made.
17. The Kenyan Luo hunted wild animals to get meat to supplement their diet. Hunting was also carried out to get ivory, hides and skins for sale.
18. Fishing was also done especially by those who lived near water bodies.
19. Iron smelting was yet another important economic activity among the Kenyan Luo. Implements like hoes, spears, arrow heads, and pangas among others were manufactured majorly for farming and defense.
20. The Kenyan Luo traded with neighbours. They would exchange their iron products for foodstuffs
21. **Socially** the Kenyan Luo practiced traditional religion. They believed in a supreme being called “Nyasaye” to whom the elders offered prayer.
22. They also believed in ancestral spirits. They organised sacrifices to appease them.
23. The Kenyan Luo had spirits called “Jougi” who were responsible for people’s well being and disaster, for example they could cause bumper harvests or bring illnesses.
24. Intervention of the spirits or “Jougi” was called for among the Kenyan Luo at the grave of the suspected departed member who was believed to be causing evil in the community.
25. “Joacen” was a trouble causer spirit who was always very angry. It was believed to have been left behind by the descendants because the one who could have caused murder for example was not punished.
26. Among the Kenyan Luo witchcraft was not tolerated at all. Those who practiced it were trounced to death using clubs.
27. The Kenyan Luo had rain makers who were always consulted for intervention either during the time of drought or floods.
28. Animals were highly respected as it was believed that it was the ancestors who had returned on earth in a different form.
29. The Kenyan Luo had traditional doctors who used herbs to cure ailments.
30. There were secret places where sacrifices were made to appease the ancestors. At these sites huge celebrations were organised to show the ancestors that they still play a major role in society’s existence.

**Revision question**Describe the social, economic and political organisation of the Kenyan Luo society during the 19th century.

Why are the Kenyan Luo remembered in the History of East Africa?

**THE KIKUYU SOCIETY**

**POLITICAL, SOCIAL AND ECONOMIC ORGANIZATION OF THE KIKUYU SOCIETY**

1. **Politically** the early history **of** the Kikuyu is still unknown however; the ancestors of the Kikuyu had probably migrated from Meru, particularly from areas occupied by the Tharaka and Ingembe.
2. Some Kikuyu lineages (Mbari) claim to have originated from Ithanga in Ukambani.
3. The Kikuyu were organised into nine clans corresponding to the nine daughters of Gikuyu, their legendary founder.
4. The Society was decentralised.
5. It was based on clanship system of politics
6. The family was the lowest political unit.
7. The family was headed by a family head.
8. The soldiers were organised under a leader who also acted as a spokesman for them before a council of elders.
9. The families with in each clan belonged to the local territorial unit called the “Mbari”.
10. The “Mbari” was led by a council of elders headed by a“Muramat”
11. The office of the Muramat was not hereditary but was given to an experienced elder.
12. The Muramati performed judicial functions.
13. In case of any aggression, the youth would be mobilised to defend the country.
14. **Socially** the society was based on classlessness.
15. Laws were passed and justice was administered by those in authority.
16. Circumcision was important for both boys and girls.
17. Circumcised boys became junior elders.
18. Another important person was the “Muthamaki” who was the leader of a territorial unit called “Riika”.
19. All land belonged to the society.
20. The family and age-set were important features in society.
21. The age set system “Mariika” was such that each set consisted of members who had been circumcised together.
22. The “Riika” was important in creating a sense of brotherhood and unity. They believed in a supreme being called “Ngai”
23. Witches and evil spirits were seen as causes of epidemics.
24. Evil spirits were driven in a ceremony of beating drums and horn blowing.
25. Senior warriors would marry, and after circumcision of their first child, they became senior elders.
26. Initiation into an egg set coincided with circumcision which took place when the young men were 18yrs.
27. Spiritual leaders and ancestors were highly respected.
28. **Economically** junior warriors did duties like clearing land.
29. Agriculture was an important economic activity.
30. They grew crops like beans, millet and sorghum among others.
31. They were pastoralists who kept cattle and goats among others.
32. They traded with Masai and Kamba among others.
33. Blacksmith was also practiced.
34. Handcraft like basket making, pottery etc.
35. Fishing was also important.
36. Hunting of wild animals and fruit gathering were also important.
37. Bee- keeping was also important.
38. Their local markets included Kiambu, Karatina and others.
39. Milk and butter were used as bride wealth.

**Revision question**   
 Describe the political, social and economic organisation of the Kikuyu society.

**THE KAMBA SOCIETY**

**POLITICAL, SOCIAL AND ECONOMIC ORGANIZATION OF THE KAMBA SOCIETY**

1. **Politically** the Kamba were organised into clans often named according to the main occupation of the members.
2. The Kamba never had a political system with a King or a central council. However they had a political structure which started with a village council and worked through three more levels to a countrywide council.
3. The councils judged disputes and set standards of social behaviour among the Kamba people.
4. The Kamba did not have a permanent army but younger men were well trained as soldiers and could be called on to fight when necessary
5. **Socially** the most highly respected elders (awe) were religious men.
6. Within the clans, the men were divided into age grades of which they were nine, starting from birth and ending with the most important elders.
7. Once the young men had entered into the fourth grade (Imwana) they were then considered adults.
8. The Kamba believed in one supreme god (Mulungu) who had two supporting gods, the creator and the sprinter.
9. Like many other African peoples they believed in the power of the ancestral spirits and that other spirits existed such as those that lived in trees and on mountains.
10. They were also such ceremonies like at birth, during adolescence and at death.
11. The fifth grade (Anake) brought family and social responsibilities such as guarding the father’s property and fighting enemies. This grade was occupied by men until their mid 40s.
12. **Economically** the Kamba were mixed Farmers, they grew grain (millet, sorghum and maize, as well as peas and beans.
13. The Kamba also herded cattle, goats and sheep and they also carried out serious hunting.
14. They did not carry out fishing because there were social rules concerning the consumption of fish.
15. Some of the clans specialised in certain occupations, for example there was a clan of black smiths
16. They also made baskets and pottery.
17. However, it was for trading that Kamba are most famous and trading formed the basis of Kamba economy.
18. They were the only one Kenyan community to dominate all three processes of trading between the interior and the coast, that is to say collecting, transporting and exporting.
19. The Kamba had division of labour, that is to say where women cultivated the soils, made baskets while the men cleared land, herded cattle, built fences and traded.

**Revision question**

Describe the political, social and economic organization of the Kamba society.

**THE GALLA SOCIETY**

**POLITICAL, SOCIAL AND ECONOMIC ORGANIZATION OF THE GALLA SOCIETY**

1. Politically the Galla were of Cushitic origins who are believed to have descended from Ethiopia.
2. The Galla now live in the North Eastern part of present day Kenya.
3. Their society was decentralized and the leadership was based on age set system.
4. The Galla were very violent and highly held at esteem over a wide area in Kenya.
5. Each age group had a leader called “Abba-Boku” who presided over meetings and prepared laws.
6. “Abba-Boku” was assisted by three other elders who were chosen from renowned families and had to be men of higher age.
7. The Galla did not like the present of foreigners in their area.
8. Boys started training as warriors from the age of ten. They would carry equipments like spears and shield to the battlefields.
9. Promotions were carried out among the Galla. This was done after every ten years.
10. **Economically** the Gallawere a pastoral society who kept cattle, sheep, goats, camels and donkeys among others.
11. They therefore moved constantly with their animals to look for pasture and water.
12. Farming was carried out among the Galla and crops like peas, beans, pepper, vegetables and cereals among others.
13. To supplement their diet from the crops grown, the Galla hunted wild animals for meat, hides and skins.
14. The Galla also carried out fishing on a small scale.
15. They carried out barter trade with their neighbours like the Somali, Ethiopian and later Swahili people at the coast.
16. **Socially** the Galla believed in a supreme being called Wanga.
17. He was very powerful, protected the Galla and controlled their future.
18. The Galla were highly united people.
19. Marriage among the Galla was compulsory and it was accompanied by bride price to the girl’s family as a sign of appreciation.
20. The Galla believed in both good and bad spirits which were believed to live in big trees, rivers, lakes and on mountains.
21. They tested manhood through hunting. Whoever killed a wild beast was regarded to be a man.
22. The Galla had social functions and celebrations were actively participated in.

**Revision question**

Describe the political, social and economic organization of the Galla society.

**THE NANDI SOCIETY**

**POLITICAL, SOCIAL AND ECONOMIC ORGANIZATION OF THE NANDI SOCIETY**

1. Politically the Nandi lived in the western region of Kenya.
2. They are believed to come from the eastern part of Mountain Elgon.
3. The clan formed the smallest political unit among the Nandi.
4. The Nandi did not have centralized system of leadership. Their state was ruled basing on clans as political units.
5. Each of these political units was administered by a council called “Kok” and they ruled political units called “Pororiet”.
6. The “Pororiet”, the political units were semi independent.
7. The clan councils existed. They acted as the highest court of appeal for solving civil matters.
8. One would make an elder basing on wisdom, military experience and skills.
9. There were three main types of age groups namely the senior age set, junior age set and elderly age set.
10. The junior age group among the Nandi were warriors who formed an army and defended the clans.
11. A group of lawyers existed and they advised the council of elders.
12. The elderly group members advised and guided the junior age sets and senior age groups in case of quarrels and disputes.
13. The Nandi were generally warriors. They loved wars very much and they were always raiding neighbours.
14. They were very unfriendly to foreigners. It is not a surprise that they resisted the European from the on set. They called the white men devils.
15. **Economically** the Nandi practiced farming. They grew yams and vegetables.
16. They also kept animals like cattle, goats, sheep, hunting dogs among others.
17. There was division of labour among the Nandi, that is to say women cultivated crops while men looked after animals and hunted.
18. The major foods were meat, milk and blood.
19. They hunted and gathered wild fruits, roots, leaves and insects to supplement their diets.
20. Being hunters, farmers and warriors the Nandi practiced iron working whereby they made spears and arrows for hunting, defense and domestic use.
21. The Nandi traded with their neighbours like the Kikuyu and Masai with whom they exchanged animal products.
22. The Nandi practiced local craft making, for example they made baskets, mats and wooden stools among others.
23. **Socially** the Nandi were organised in age sets of the young, the senior and the elders.
24. After every five years the youth who would undergo initiation ceremonies, for example the youth would become senior members of the society; the senior members would be the elders in the society and so on.
25. The Nandi spoke one language and this kept them together and strongly united.
26. They believed in the spirit of the ancestors as their gods.
27. Marriage among the Hehe was polygamous and in respect for the offer from the parents of the girl, the Nandi gave bride price.
28. For the big role played by the elders in the Nandi society, they were highly respected by the youth.
29. The Nandi had a prophet called Orkoyoit who served as a religious leader. Consultation would be made to him for military and social issues.
30. The Nandi elders settled social conflicts among the clan members for harmonial living of the members.

**Revision question**

Describe the political, social and economic organization of the Nandi society.

**THE WANGA SOCIETY  
POLITICAL, SOCIAL AND ECONOMIC ORGANIZATION OF THE WANGA SOCIETY**

1. **Politically** the Wanga society was found in the western Kenya Highlands in the Nyanza Province.
2. It is believed to have been founded by a man called Wanga who named the Kingdom after himself.
3. Wanga had a centralized kingdom with the King as the topmost administrative figure. It was the only centralized society in Kenya.
4. Wanga had hereditary leadership.
5. In line with hereditary leadership the Wanga fought many wars of succession because the most powerful tribe provided the king.
6. The Wanga were always ready for attacks from neighbours.
7. They had a standing army to defend their society from external attacks and also to expand their kingdom.
8. Sometime they hired Masai mercenary to help them against internal invaders like the Iteso.
9. The king of the Wanga was assisted by a prime minister (Omwekeziyor Omwikhasiya), army commander (Omusesia) together with provincial and district chiefs called Abami.
10. Each of the clan of the Wanga had a paramount chief.
11. A council of elders existed among the Wanga to assist the king in running the affairs of the Kingdom.
12. **Economically** the Wanga kept animals like cattle and goats among others as a source of food and income generating project.
13. They also grew crops like maize, yams and millet.
14. To supplement the crops grown, they carried out small scale fishing.
15. The Wanga also hunted for wild animals for food, skins and hides. Ivory was also got from elephants for sale.
16. Women concentrated on cultivation together with young girls as men went out hunting. Division of labour was therefore emphasized.
17. The Wanga traded with their neighbours like the Iteso, Masai and Kikuyu among others.
18. Local crafts like mats, pots, baskets were made for sale and domestic purpose.
19. From animal skins, the Wanga made cloth. Sometime they made cloth from banana leaves.
20. **Socially** they were organised highly on clan basis. Each clan had a totem (emblem) for easy identification.
21. They put on cloth made of goat skin and banana fibre.
22. They practiced marriage but intermarriage was not accepted among the Wanga.
23. The Wanga organised themselves into age groups for defensive purposes.
24. Ceremonies to mark entry into age group was organised especially at the beginning of the seasons.
25. There was initiation where circumcision was carried out. Removal of teeth from the lower jaw bone was also carried out.
26. The Wanga emphasized unity for harmonious living among the members of the community.
27. They spoke different languages but it was easy for them to understand one another.
28. The smallest and most important unit among the Wanga was a family.
29. Their home property consisted of calabashes, grinding stones for grains, pots and stools.
30. Music and dancing festivals were frequently organised for social celebration and entertainments.

**Revision questions**

1. Describe the political, social and economic organization of the Wanga society.
2. Why are the Wanga remembered in the history of East Africa?

**CHAPTER 10  
THE LONG DISTANCE TRADE IN EAST AFRICA**

**WHAT THE LONG DISTANCE TRADE WAS**

1. Trade is the buying and selling of goods and services.
2. The long distance trade however, was the trade in which people who participated moved long distances through the interior up to the coast and back in search for goods.
3. It was a commercial activity between the interior people and the coast of East Africa.
4. It took place before the coming of the European colonizers. It was therefore a pre-colonial trade.
5. It took place during the 19th century.
6. The main traders from the interior were: the Nyamwezi, Yao, Baganda, Banyoro, Kamba, Khartoumers among others.
7. The Nyamwezi provided cheap porters to carry goods from the interior to the coast and back.
8. The Arabs and Swahili traders were the main traders from the interior.
9. The caravans were organised by the coastal traders to reach the interior for goods and then to coast to take the goods.
10. The medium of exchange in this trade was bartering, that is to say exchange of goods for goods. The interior traders would exchange their goods with Arabs goods.
11. However, cowrie shells and coins were later introduced to supplement barter trade, which was proving to be disadvantageous.
12. The items of the long distance trade involved exports and imports.
13. From the interior of east Africa, the traders exported slaves, ivory, bark cloth, foodstuffs, gold, and iron tools among others.
14. Imports to the interior were: guns, wheat, rice, glass and other metallic implements among others.
15. Slaves formed the most important items of the long distance trade. They got them through raids.
16. The interior leaders made sure that the trade routes were secured for the caravans.
17. The long distance trade ran through well defined trade routes which the major ones were the Northern trade route, Central trade route and southern trade route but with smaller junctions.

**FACTORS THAT LED TO THE DEVELOPMENT OF LONG DISTANCE TRADE IN EAST AFRICA**

1. The protection given to the traders by the Arabs who had guns was one of the factors for the development of the long distance trade.
2. The availability of trade items like slaves, ivory, bark cloth, glassware and so on.
3. High demand of trade items like slaves and ivory by the coastal traders prompted the Africans to get involved in supplying the items.
4. Traders themselves were getting high profits from the activity more than other activities.
5. The development of trade routes such as the Northern route, central route and so on.
6. In the interior of East Africa, inland markets such as Tabora, Ujiji and Bagamoyo existed and this boosted the trade.
7. The co-operation between the African chiefs and the influential traders like Mirambo and the Arab traders at first.
8. Presence of well organised Kingdom such as Nyamwezi, Buganda and others who organised the internal traders.
9. Role of men such as Tipu-Tip and Mirambo who organised the traders.
10. Seyyid Said’s transfer of his capital from Muscat to Zanzibar and his declaration of Zanzibar as an international slave market.
11. The Arabs had also established plantations of cloves and coconuts at the coast that needed labour. The labour could only be got from slaves provided by the Africans.
12. Among the Africans intertribal wars were common and during these wars war captives were sold into slavery, hence boosting the long distance trade.
13. The existence of money lenders known as Banyans eased the trade. They were able to give the Africans money on credit to start business.
14. The presence of rich Arab families, the Busaidi Arabs increased the volume of the Long distance trade.
15. Presence of cheap labour provided by the African slaves also led to the development of the trade.
16. The development of Kiswahili language that acted as a medium of communication in trade.
17. Existence of local trade within the East African states already, for example Buganda traded with Ankole, Masai traded with Yao and so on.
18. Introduction of cowrie shells as an acceptable medium of exchange made the trade easy.
19. High demand for foreign goods among the East Africans, for example guns, beads, cloth and others. This ensured that African could be willing to accept the goods.
20. Some tribes produced goods in surplus and the need to get rid of the surplus led to development of long distance trade, for example the Baganda produced barkcloth in excess, and Bunyoro also produced salt in excess.
21. Some societies had skills that enabled them to make superior products, for example the Nyamwezi, Baganda and others produced iron tools which they exchanged with other traders.
22. Division of labour among African societies, that is to say, men cleared the gardens and left the work of planting and harvesting to women, among the Nyamwezi. This gave men the opportunity to involve in trade.
23. Introduction of the gun improved security along trade routes and increased slave raids into the interior.
24. The maximum co-operation between the interior tribes and the coastal people especially when Islam was introduced. It acted as a unifying factor.
25. Trade and exchange of goods among the Africans were cultural practices, that is to say it was part and parcel of the Africans.
26. Some Africans also joined this trade due to love for adventure, for example among the Acholi and the Kamba high respect was accorded to someone who had widely travelled.
27. The African leaders joined this trade to create friendship, for example Mutesa I of Buganda and Mirambo of Nyamwezi wanted friendship with the Arabs.
28. The interior people also had plenty of foodstuffs as a result of fertile soils that East Africa had.

**Note that** the above points also explain why the Africans like the Yao, Nyamwezi and Kamba among others participated in the long distance trade.

**ORGANISATION OF THE LONG DISTANCE TRADE IN EAST AFRICA**

1. This was the trade carried out between the coastal people and the interior tribes of East Africa.
2. The trade developed around the first half of the 19th century.
3. It. involved movement of long journeys from the coast to the interior, hence the name long distance trade.
4. The main participants in the interior included the Nyamwezi, Kamba, Yao, and other tribes.
5. From the coast, came the Swahili people and the Arabs
6. However the trade also involved Europeans like Spanish, British, French, among others.
7. The African chiefs in the interior were the chief negotiators for the items sold to the coastal traders.
8. The Swahili people were the middlemen between the coastal Arabs and the interior traders.
9. The trade, was organised on caravan basis, that is to say, people could organise themselves into large groups and move together as one community in a long line.
10. From the coast, goods like guns, beads, clothes, glassware, gun powder, and others entered the interior.
11. Goods that came from the interior included ivory, slaves, gold, salt and many others.
12. Slaves were the most important items of trade of the long distance trade.
13. They were chained on their necks, arms and feet as they transported them. This was done to ensure that they never ran away or rebelled.
14. The Yao provided gold which they obtained from Mwenomotapa empire in Central Africa.
15. The Kamba provided ivory to the Long distance traders that they obtained by hunting elephants from the forests.
16. The trade had money lenders called the Banyans, who came from India.
17. The trade involved taxation where taxes were paid to the local chiefs.
18. The trade involved goods being carried on backs and heads or head- portage.
19. The Nyamwezi provided labour to carry goods or work as porters to carry goods from the interior to the coast.
20. The main medium of communication was Swahili language.
21. The trade originally was organised on a barter system, that is to say goods being exchanged for others.
22. Cowrie shells were made to shift from the monopoly of barter trade and also to solve its disadvantages.
23. Cowrie shells were later replaced by coins and they served very well as medium of exchange during the trade.
24. At first the Arabs feared to go into the interior due to fear of man-eaters, harsh climate and tropical diseases but at time went on they gained courage and penetrated inland.
25. The Nyamwezi acted as middlemen, who supplied at first, the goods from the interior.
26. With time, the Arabs penetrated into the interior. They were able to interact freely with the Africans who supplied them with plenty of trade items.
27. The trade followed three specific trade routes namely Northern, Central and Southern trade routes.
28. The southern route started from Kilwa through Malawi and was dominated byYao.
29. The Central route was the biggest and it started from Bagamoyo to Ujiji, then to Buganda. It was dominated by Nyamwezi.
30. The Northern route started from Pangani and Mombasa to Taita hills. Still on this trade route there was a significant route of the Khartoumers.
31. The trading centres in the interior included Tabora, Ujiji and Bagamoyo.
32. At the coast, the major trading centre was Zanzibar.

**IMPACT OR EFFECTS OF THE LONG DISTANCE TRADE UPON THE PEOPLE OF EAST AFRICA**

1. The effects were both positive and negative.
2. They were also social, economic and political in nature.
3. It led to the formation and expansion of states in East Africa, for example Buganda.
4. It led to rise of strong statesmen like Mirambo, Nyungu-Yamawe, Mutesa I and Msiri among others.
5. The chiefs in East Africa obtained a lot of wealth and this improved their standard of living.
6. It led to prominence of communities like the Yao, Nyamwezi, Kamba, and the Baganda among others. That is to say they became famous and well known.
7. The long distance trade led to the collapse of some states, for example with the long distance trade, Buganda weakened her traditional enemy of Bunyoro.
8. The trade led to introduction of the gun that increased instability in the area. Captured slaves were badly treated, for example they were flogged to be weakened and even killed if they tried to resist.
9. It led to decline of agriculture in some states, for example the Nyamwezi abandoned agriculture and concentrated on trade. Famine then set in.
10. Towns like Tabora, Ujiji and Bagamoyo among others developed in the interior.
11. Because of Arab penetration into the interior, Islam was spread.
12. Swahili culture spread into the interior and this led to loss of African culture.
13. The trade exposed the East African region to outside world. It opened the interior of East Africa to the outside world.
14. It also led to depopulation of East Africa due to slave trade.
15. Inter-marriages were facilitated between coastal people and interior people, giving rise to half castes.
16. New goods of Arab origin like guns, beads, clothes, glasses and many others were introduced. The Africans in the interior enjoyed them.
17. As Arab goods of Arab and European origin penetrated into African communities, African technology was destroyed by the new and advanced Arab skills.
18. Monetary system with the introduction of cowrie shells and coins was introduced.
19. Industries were set up at the coast of East Africa to process some trade items.
20. It exploited the resources of East Africa, for example slaves were exchanged for simple items like beads, cloth among others.
21. The trade led to introduction of new crops into the interior of East Africa like rice, paw-paw, cloves, and Arabica coffee among others.
22. Due to the penetration of Arabs into the interior of East Africa the Kamba and Nyamwezi lost their middleman position.
23. Friendship and cooperation among the East African communities developed. This ensured peace and prosperity (richness).
24. It clearly opened up East Africa for the scramble and partition, because its economic potentials were identified. It attracted the Europeans who later colonized East Africa.
25. The trade later led to improvement in transport and communication. Trade routes developed into better road networks.
26. There was destruction of property due to slave trade raids that was merciless.
27. There was depopulation of animals, for example elephants were seriously hunted for, for ivory and their number greatly reduced.
28. It also increased inter-tribal wars, tribal quarrels and warfare due to introduction of the gun.

**PROBLEMS FACED DURING LONG DISTANCE TRADE**

1. The problems faced were social, economic and political in nature.
2. They were also internal and external in nature.
3. Heavy taxes imposed by some kings like Mirambo of Nyamwezi discouraged traders.
4. The very long distances that were too tiresome made some traders to loose interest in the trade.
5. Epidemicdiseases especially the tropical diseases like malaria.
6. There was the problem of man eaters in the interior.
7. Exhaustion of certain good. Items like ivory due to reduction of Elephants.
8. Communication was indeed a problem, that is to say, few people could speak Swahili language.
9. The Ngoni invaded several tribes in southern Tanganyika and this disrupted trade.
10. Unreliable and undependable seasonal changes rainy seasons and prolonged drought.
11. Quarrels and misunderstandings among traders for the control of the trade, for example Mirambo had problems with Arabs over taxes.
12. The money lenders, the Indian Banyans charged too much interest on their money.
13. Some tribes were too hostile like the Masai.
14. Still the geographical conditions of the interior were poor. Relief like hills, mountains, river valleys, swamps were major problems to the traders during walking.
15. Presence of thick forests disturbed movement from the coast to the interior.
16. Interior traders did not have enough guns to hunt for slaves and elephants for ivory.
17. Bartering as a medium of exchange was not the best form of trade. It was unreliable because one could not know the proper value of the commodities.
18. The slaves could die on their way to the coast due to mistreatment.
19. Some commodities, for example ivory were heavy and difficult to carry.
20. There were also very few porters to carry goods and yet transport system was not properly developed.
21. Lack of food at times for the traders, especially those from the interior.

**ROLES PLAYED BY THE AFRICANS IN THE LONG DISTANCE TRADE**

**Note that:** The points for this topic are some how similar to the roles of the Nyamwezi, Kamba, and Yao.

1. The Africans served as porters for carrying trade items, for example the Nyamwezi carried commodities to and from the East African coast.
2. Some Africans organised trade caravans, for example the Yao and Nyamwezi.
3. They provided geographical knowledge to the foreigners. For example the Nyamwezi directed or guided foreigners.
4. They acted as interpreters of foreign languages for the fellow Africans to the Arabs and Europeans who participated in the trade.
5. The Africans signed commercial treaties with foreigners, for example chief Fundikira.
6. They provided trade commodities to foreign traders, for example the Nyamwezi provided ivory.
7. The Africans acted as middlemen during the long distance trade, for example theYao and Nyamwezi.
8. The Africans also offered comfort and friendship during the long distance trade.
9. The Africans also provided market for the foreign goods.
10. They encouraged trade through acceptance of Islam which united people.
11. They taught the foreigners African languages and vice versa.
12. They carried out raids for slaves to supply to the foreigners, for example the Yao.
13. The Africans also supplied foodstuffs to the foreigners, for example the Yao, Nyamwezi among others.
14. The Africans hunted elephants for ivory to supply other traders, for example the Kamba.
15. Some Africans controlled some trade routes, for example the Kamba controlled the Northern trade route.
16. They provided spears and poisoned arrows that supplemented the guns for security.
17. The Africans encouraged fellow Africans to get involved in the long distance trade. People like the Nyamwezi encouraged other traders to join this trade.
18. The Africans were very good at travelling long distances looking for commodities to supply to foreigners.
19. Some African communities walked as far as Zimbabwe to look for commodities like gold, for example, the Yao expanded the long distance trade to those areas.

**ROLES OF SPECIFIC AFRICAN COMMUNITIES IN THE LONG DISTANCE TRADE**

**THE YAO**

1. The Yao were the major long distance traders in the southern part of East Africa.
2. The Yao had developed love for travelling which enabled them later to get involved in the long distance trade.
3. The Yao are remembered as the most active East African slave traders in the 19th century.
4. The reason for the above was not only the growing demand for slaves at the coast, but also the nature of Yao society. Several ambitious rulers raided their neighbours for slaves.
5. The most famous chief among the Yao was Mataka I who is said to have had 600 wives. Mponda was also one of the Yao chiefs.
6. The Yao became so powerful as dealers in slaves that very few Arab and Swahili traders entered their territory. They therefore supplied slaves.
7. The Yao controlled the southern trade route and ensured peace and security.
8. They acted as middlemen between the coastal Arab traders and the interior traders.
9. They also supplied ivory during the long distance trade.
10. They would exchange their trade items for beads and mirrors. They therefore provided the largest market for the Arab goods.
11. They also provided gold to other traders which they obtained from Zimbabwe.
12. When Swahili culture penetrated inland, the Yao became their agents to spread this culture, especially in Southern Tanganyika. Kiswahili later became the major means of communication.
13. They also employed Swahili secretaries as record keepers in business.
14. The Yao also sold live elephants to the Arab traders who highly demanded for them.
15. By walking as far as Zimbabwe to look for commodities like gold, the Yao expanded the long distance trade to those areas.
16. The Yao established many trading posts or trading centres in the areas of Southern Tanganyika.

**THE NYAMWEZI**

1. The Nyamwezi community lived in central Tanganyika.
2. They were very active traders during the long distance trade.
3. It was probably about 1800 that the Nyamwezi first long distance caravans reached the coast.
4. By the 1830s several Nyamwezi caravans were regularly reaching the coast with ivory, copper, slaves and iron works.
5. The Nyamwezi stayed at the coast in large encampments, trading and farming until the next dry season, they returned home carrying cloth, beads and other trading items.
6. They kept animals and therefore supplied animal products to the coastal traders.
7. The Nyamwezi were the best middlemen known during the long distance trade. The Arabs and other Europeans feared to enter into the interior; the Nyamwezi therefore collected the goods that they sold to them.
8. In the middle of the 19th century when the Zanzibaris and guns arrived, the Nyamwezi greatly increased their slave raiding. They therefore supplied slaves to the coastal Arabs.
9. The Nyamwezi trade route from Ujiji to Bagamoyo via Tabor a (Unyanyembe) was the busiest in East Africa.
10. They set trading posts along the coast of Lake Tanganyika, for example at Ujiji.
11. Some of the Nyamwezi moved to Katanga especially in the Shaba region thus connecting East Africa to well established trading networks in central Africa.
12. By the 1850s some Nyamwezi merchants had established trading posts on the far side of Lake Tanganyika. Msiri was one of them. He settled in Katanga with his wealth and established an own empire.
13. The Nyamwezi also offered labour to carry trade items to and from the East African coast.
14. They offered protection to the caravans since they were in control of the central trade route.
15. They also accommodated the Arab traders who penetrated inland. They therefore offered conducive trading atmosphere.
16. The Nyamwezi offered market for the Arab goods, for example they exchanged their goods with the Arab goods like clothes, guns, glasses, mirrors and many others.
17. They supplied copper to other traders which they collected from Katanga region in Congo.
18. They also hunted for elephants and supplied ivory to the long distance traders.

**THE KAMBA**

1. The strongest long distance traders in modern Kenya were the Kamba.
2. At first they increased their elephant hunting to obtain ivory to barter with the Nyika for cattle.
3. Then by the early 19th century they had developed a wide spread and valid trading system.
4. They controlled the Northern trade route of the long distance trade.
5. They therefore provided security to the coastal traders and other traders who used the route.
6. They acted as middlemen between the Arabs and the interior tribes like the Kikuyu, Embu among others.
7. As hunters and farmers they provided other long distance traders with meat, grains and beer.
8. As iron workers the Kamba traded in arrow heads, iron ornaments and other implements in long distance trade.
9. Their arrow poison made from snake and scorpion venom mixed with liquid from the bark of a certain tree was considered the best available.
10. The Kamba merchants traded north in Samburu country and south to Uzaramo but the Nyika would not let them reach the coast.
11. The Kamba had no tradition of slavery, however as they grew rich, some Kamba communities bought slaves from the coast to do their farming.
12. The most important Kamba trader was Kivoyi.
13. In 1830s and 1840s he made a great name for himself as a hunter and a trader. Kivoyi had a large number of followers and slaves and organised caravans around Kilimanjaro beyond Mt. Kenya.
14. The Kamba set trading posts inland. These acted as collection centres for goods for the Arab traders.
15. They offered markets for the Arab goods, for example clothes, beads, and guns among others.
16. The Kamba controlled the trading activities to and from Kikuyu land and made the neighbouring Masai people pay them taxes.
17. By 1870, the Kamba dominance in trade had begun declining. Ivory was harder to obtain, Zanzibaris were organising their own caravans to the North West, the Kikuyu Embu and other people wanted to trade directly with the coastal merchants.
18. Nevertheless, the Kamba were important in the commercial life of East Africa until the colonial period.

**COLLAPSE OR DECLINE OF THE LONG DISTANCE TRADE DURING THE 19TH CENTURY**

1. Death of important leaders and organisers like Mirambo, Mutesa I, Nyungu- Yamawe, Msiri among others.
2. The Abolition of slave trade that had been a major activity also led to its decline.
3. The coming of the Christian missionaries with their anti-slavery campaigns dealt a blow to the trade. They advocated for a legitimate trade.
4. The Ngoni invasion of East Africa disrupted heavily the long distance trade. They created a lot of instability that discouraged other traders.
5. The burden of heavy taxes by interior chiefs discouraged most participants.
6. Inter- tribal wars led to the decline of the long distance trade. They exposed the traders to insecurity.
7. Colonisation of East Africa disorganised the trade the more. East Africa fell under the control of European powers that were not in support of slave trade.
8. The introduction of the guns among the East African communities to a small extent increased insecurity that disrupted the long distance trade.
9. Trading items like ivory got exhausted or finished and this could not make the trade to continue.
10. The construction of the Uganda railway from Mombasa up to Uganda made slaves useless for transport.
11. The insecurity brought by Ruga-Ruga also led to the decline of the long distance trade. They began terrorizing the long distance traders especially after the death of Mirambo.
12. Wrangles, conflicts and quarrels between the Arabs and communities like Nyamwezi over payment of Taxes ended the peaceful co-existence and it affected the trade greatly.
13. The introduction of cash economy or use of money which replaced barter trade affected the progress of the trade because some communities could not afford this monetary system.
14. Tropical diseases, for example malaria and sleeping sickness scared the traders especially those from the coast, hence decline of the trade.
15. Unfavourable climate in the interior also was a problem, especially heavy rains and prolonged drought.
16. The presence of wild animals in some areas that sometimes scared traders and even killed some of them, also led to the decline of the long distance trade.
17. Some traders were not comfortable with Kiswahili language. They failed to learn it, yet it could help in communication during trade.

**Revision questions**

* + 1. What was the long distance trade?
    2. Describe the organisation of long distance trade in East Africa.
    3. What were the factors responsible for the development of long distance trade?
    4. What were the effects of the long distance in East Africa?
    5. What problems were faced by the long distance traders?
    6. Why did the long distance trade decline?
    7. What role did any TWO of the following societies play in the organization of the long distance trade: a) the Nyamwezi b) the Yao c) the Kamba?
    8. Why did a) The Yao b) The Nyamwezi c) The Kamba join the long distance trade?

**CHAPTER 11**

**SLAVE TRADE IN EAST AFRICA**

**WHAT WAS SLAVE TRADE?**

1. Slave trade comes from two words namely; slavery and trade.
2. Slave trade is the buying and selling of human beings as commodities.
3. Whereas slavery is a situation where a human being owns another to work for him or her without payment.
4. Slavery is also the ownership of human beings by another as property.
5. Slave trade therefore involved the actual buying and selling of human beings.
6. Slaves worked for their masters until the masters could stop them.
7. Never -the -less, slavery was not new in East Africa that is to say there were a number of domestic slaves among the people of East Africa especially in the chiefdoms and palaces of kings.
8. The slaves, however, in those days were treated as human beings and they had their rights.
9. But with the coming of the Arabs, Asians, Indians, Europeans and others the whole system of slavery was changed.
10. They got the slaves for very hard manual work and the conditions they subjected the slaves in were unbearable.
11. The Arabs, Africans and Europeans contributed to the development of slave trade in East Africa.
12. Therefore the three groups namely; the Africans, Arabs and Europeans participated equally in slave trade.
13. The Africans got as slaves were exported to work in plantations and salt mines in Persia; they did manual work in Europe, China and other places.

**HOW SLAVES WERE ACQUIRED OR GOT IN EAST AFRICA.**

1. The ways in which slaves were acquired were in most cases too brutal (cruel).
2. Through wars, where war captives were taken as slaves and sold to the outsiders.
3. Criminals that had bad records in society were taken as slaves, for example wizards, debtors, adulterers and murderers among others.
4. The destitute or the needy were taken as slaves.
5. Some of the slaves were bought from the chiefs.
6. Prisoners of war were also taken as slaves.
7. Barter trade, that is to say, where slaves were exchanged for foreign goods like mirrors, beads, and others.
8. Slave caravans went to villages directly to look for slaves.
9. Big raids could be organized against the weak communities using guns, spears and clubs and people could be taken as slaves.
10. At times those moving alone also provided slaves once arrested.
11. Young and energetic people were just forcefully captured by using guns and swords.

**WHY THERE WAS AN INCREASE IN SLAVE TRADE BETWEEN 1800 AND 1850 IN E. AFRICA**

Slave trade increased in East Africa between 1800 and 1850 due to:

1. The defeat of the Portuguese from the coast of East Africa by the Arabs which enabled the Arabs to re-establish trade links with the continent of Asia, hence slave trade.
2. There was an increased European demand for slaves to go and work in their plantations.
3. Seyyid - Said’s establishment of big clove plantations at the coast of East Africa especially in Zanzibar and Pemba where slaves wereimportant to provide labour.
4. The penetration of the Arab and Swahili traders into the interior of East Africa who organized raids for slaves led to the increase in slave trade.
5. Some African cultures were very primitive and backward. Slavery was considered to be a way of eliminating bad ones.
6. The tribal conflicts along with inter- tribal conflicts also led to increase in slave trade, for example wars between Buganda and Bunyoro where people were captured.
7. Seyyid Said’s transfer of his capital from Oman (Muscat) to the coast of East Africa ; Zanzibar. He later established Zanzibar as an international market.
8. Slave trade was highly profitable to the East African chiefs and Arabs.
9. The development of the long distance trade in East Africa that needed slaves to transport goods from the interior of East Africa to the coast and vice-versa.
10. The development of well defined trade routes in the interior brought more Arab slave traders which increased slave trade.
11. Religious arrogance or racial prejudice, that is to say, where the Arabs believed in being supreme and that they had to get people of low status to go and work for them.
12. The industrial revolution in Europe as early as 1850 increased the need for raw materials that could be cheaply produced by African slaves.
13. Existence of trade routes of long distance trade gave, more ease to slave traders in East Africa, to use such trade routes for slaves.
14. Presence of guns which were used to raid slaves led to its increment.
15. The demand for guns by African leaders to expand their territories and defend them, forced them to look for slaves to exchange for guns.
16. Earlier on slave trade had been abolished in West Africa, hence the Portuguese who were operating in that region turned to East Africa.
17. Some people voluntarily surrendered to the slave dealers due to unbearable conditions they were living in.
18. Some of the African leaders were willing to sell their subjects into slavery instead of defending them, for example Mirambo of the Nyamwezi.
19. Some African leaders also needed wealth or riches since slave trade was very profitable.
20. The spread of Kiswahili language which became a commercial language increased the slave trade.
21. The intermarriages between the Arabs and the Africans along the coast increased the relationship between the two communities and this also increased the demand for slaves in East Africa.
22. The increase in shipping facilities along the Indian Ocean increased the demand for slaves.
23. The collapse of gold trade at the East African coast forced traders to resort to slave trade for survival.
24. Slaves were demanded to transport commodities like ivory. They were therefore needed for transport.
25. The demand for ready made goods from the Arabs, forced the Africans to provide slaves that were highly demanded by the Arabs.

**EFFECTS OF SLAVE TRADE IN EAST AFRICA BEFORE 1850**

* 1. Slave trade led to depopulation as very many people were taken from East Africa to other areas of the world.
  2. It reduced East African economic development, as the trade took away most young and energetic people who could do various economic activities.
  3. Several people in East Africa were killed during the raids which were intended to get slaves.
  4. There was displacement of family members from one another, that is to say as people who were running away from slave raiders, got detached from their family members.
  5. Villages of Africans were set on fire due to slave trade; hence it led to massive suffering and languishing of Africans.
  6. The activity was very de humanizing, that is to say people were treated very harshly during slave trade. They were whipped, flogged and so on.
  7. Farmlands were destroyed during slave raids, hence causing famine later.
  8. Those involved in trading of slaves like Seyyid Said got a lot of wealth.
  9. Slave routes latter facilitated the growth of communication networks. Modern roads and railways were established following those routes
  10. Slave trade caused insecurity in several parts of East Africa, as a result people lived in great panic and fear. There were inter-tribal wars.
  11. It provided a firm ground upon which Christian missionaries came to E Africa. Missionaries claimed to have come to stop slave trade.
  12. Thereafter, their activities led to scramble and partition of east Africa. As they got problems with the Africans, they invited their home governments to come and protect them.
  13. Some towns like Zanzibar were able to expand due to slave trade.
  14. In order to end this trade, legitimate trade was introduced into several parts of East Africa.
  15. A number of crops like rice, wheat, among others were introduced by the Arabs at the coast and later in the interior.
  16. East Africa was partly exposed to the outside world because of slave trade and slavery.
  17. It led to fame and prominence of several slave dealers like Tipu-Tip, Seyyid Said and others.
  18. The African chiefs also got a lot of wealth from slave trade and became economically strong.
  19. New and strong empires like Nyamwezi of Mirambo were partly established out slave trade activity.
  20. Small states were wiped out by powerful ones as slave trade intensified, for example Busoga kingdom in Uganda.
  21. Towns developed along the east Africa coast, for example Zanzibar became an international trade market and gained prominence.
  22. The Arab and Kiswahili languages spread into the interior as a result of slave trade.
  23. There were also intermarriages between the Arabs who penetrated inland and the Africans inland. This gave rise to half caste.
  24. African communities developed in America, Brazil, and Jamaica. Up to date, in these countries, African races can be seen.
  25. Guns became means of acquiring political power and wealth among the Africans.
  26. It intensified the spread of Islam into interior of East Africa as the Arabs could some times end up Islamizing the people.
  27. However, it is also true that the Arabs involvement into slave trade had a negative impact on Islam, that is to say people in East Africa feared Islam due to the Arabs involvement into slave trade.

**ABOLITION OF SLAVE TRADE IN EAST AFRICA AFTER 1850**

**REASONS FOR ITS ABOLITION**

1. The abolition drive started in the 18th century, about 1772 AD.
2. Britain was one of the European nations that greatly benefited from slave trade. However Britain started the campaign to end slave trade due to many reasons.
3. Industrial revolution in Europe whereby machines took up work originally done by slaves hence slaves were declared useless.
4. Activities of humanitarians like William Wilberforce, Granville sharp, and Thomas Clarkson who decampaigned slavery and slave trade.
5. European writers and philosophers and religious-leaders attacked Slave trade.
6. Slave trade was against the principle of equality of all-mankind both before the law and before God.
7. Overproduction of commodities like sugar, clothes in Europe necessitated that slaves be resettled in Africa to provide market for European goods.
8. Slave labour had its own disadvantages. The slaves would need to be fed, housed, treated and sometimes they would strike, hence the need to end slavery.
9. With time population increased in Europe and stopping slave trade therefore was to check on population increase.
10. Slave labour had become unproductive, for example, slaves if not happy could destroy machines and slaves needed holidays.
11. New homes for freed slaves were established in places like Sierra Leone and Liberia in West Africa and Bagamoyo at the East African coast. The slaves released would now be settled.
12. Pressure from the public (public opinion) after studying the poor conditions of the slaves forced humanitarians to speed campaigns against slavery.
13. The press like magazines, newspaper, radios and so on also played a big role as they reported massively the mistreatment of the slaves.
14. The coming of Christianity to East Africa and their preaching overpowered slave traders who gave a second thought to the activity.
15. When slave trade was abolished in West Africa, the abolitionists were forced to come to east Africa to abolish it also.
16. The American Revolution which introduced the ideas of freedom and democracy led to rebellion elsewhere.
17. The 1789 French revolution which preached liberty and equality among human beings also contributed to slave abolition. Britain took up the lead.
18. The philosophers like Rousseau also held similar views of equality of mankind.

**STEPS TAKEN TO ABOLISH SLAVE TRADE IN EAST AFRICA**

1. The question of slave trade was discussed in Europe during the Vienna settlement and conquests of 1814-1815.
2. Britain led the campaign to end slave trade and slavery.
3. The Humanitarians were at the fore front to end slave trade and slavery. Notable of them were William Wilberforce and Clarkson.
4. In 1807 the British parliament declared slave trade and slavery illegal.
5. By 1815, British ships begun inspecting and patrolling on major water bodies in Europe to ensure that no slave trade went on.
6. Britain also took the initiative to stop slave trade along the East African coast and in the interior.
7. In 1877, the governor of Mauritius signed a treaty with the sultan of Madagascar to stop taking slaves to Mauritius.
8. In 1822 Seyyid - Said under the influence of Britain signed the “Moresby” treaty.   
   However the “Moresby treaty” had its weakness, though it did not allow the Christian countries to participate in the slave trade, it stated that the Arabian states could freely trade in slaves in Africa.
9. In 1824, Captain Owen set up the Owen protectorate over Mombasa, the idea had been to abolish slave trade in the area.
10. But, however, Captain Owen had acted without consultation with the British government and he was thus forced to withdraw in 1826.
11. In 1839, another attempt was made to effect to the Moresby treaty signed between Britain and Seyyid- Said, this attempt however ended up into a complete failure.
12. In 1845 Seyyid- Said signed another treaty with Colonel Hammerton who was the British Consul (representative) in Zanzibar.
13. Therefore, the “Hammerton treaty” of 1845 was also signed which provided that “the slave trade could only be conducted within the territories under the Sultan of Zanzibar.
14. In 1856 Seyyid Said died which gave several English people the chance to condemn slave trade.
15. The most serious decampaigner of slave trade was Dr. Livingstone, who wrote several articles and pamphlets on slave trade.
16. Although the Hammerton treaty had forbidden all Christian countries from involving in slave trade, the French through their “Free Immigration scheme” continued to take part in slave trade.
17. In 1864, the French free immigration scheme was abolished.
18. Generally, it can be examined that efforts to abolish slave trade in East Africa were more successful after 1873; this was so because initially slave trade was still very profitable.
19. In 1873 more tiresome efforts to end slave trade were made by Dr. John Kirk. He signed a treaty with Sultan Barghash that stated that: - Shipment of slaves from the coast of Africa was to end and that by the Hammerton treaty, all slave trading activities which were around Zanzibar were to be closed down.
20. In 1876, Sultan Barghash made other proclamations and statements namely: - Slaves could not in any way approach the coast from the interior and he also confirmed that slaves could no longer be moved either by land or sea.
21. From then onwards, the German and British administrators, explorers and missionaries began to go into the interior to preach for the end of slave trade.
22. In 1889, a law was passed which made it clear that after Jan 1890, all the children born were to be automatically free citizens.
23. In 1897, all the slaves in Zanzibar and Pemba were freed.
24. In 1905, in all German territories children born in that year and thereafter became free.
25. In 1907 Britain declared that the state of slavery was illegal in the areas which they controlled.
26. The British abolished the “legal status of slavery” in Tanganyika after they had taken over the administration of the area in 1919.
27. In 1921, slavery ended in Tanganyika.
28. With the coming of explorers, missionaries and legitimate traders, East Africa moved from a state of slavery to colonialism.
29. In the campaign against slave trade and slavery Britain used patrol means to ensure no slave trade was taking place along the east African coast.
30. Britain also persuaded other European countries like France, Spain and Portugal to stop slave trade.
31. Mission centres were also set up to act as homes for freed slaves, for example Bagamoyo.
32. Information was published in form of books, pamphlets, magazines and newspaper to persuade Europeans to stop slave trade and slavery.

**PROBLEMS OR CHALLENGES FACED BY THE SLAVE TRADE ABOLITIONISTS**

1. The problems were social, economic and political in nature.
2. Others were from within East Africa where slaves were got.
3. While others were external especially from Europe where the abolitionists and the beneficiaries of slaves were from.
4. There was opposition from other European powers which had not industrialized, for example Portugal and Spain.
5. Britain was alone in the struggle and the missionaries they used were few in number.
6. The British anti-slavery squadron or forces operating in East Africa was too small to do the work effectively.
7. The East African area and coast line was too big to be monitored effectively.
8. The British forces, for a long time only concentrated on the E. African coast and therefore other areas were not at first covered.
9. British personnel were small in comparison with the big East African region.
10. European powers continued with slave trade, they shipped the slaves’ cargos into ships bearing American flags.
11. There was a problem in transport, that is to say there was no clear means of transport as yet.
12. The poor climate of East Africa could not favour the abolitionists.
13. Lack of enough geographical knowledge of several parts of East Africa.
14. There were numerous caravan routes for slaves; hence it was not easy to follow up all of them.
15. They lacked social facilities. For example hostile tribes gave them hard time by attacking them.
16. The treaties that were signed to abolish slave trade were too weak to do so.
17. Slave trade dealers were usually armed and often killed abolitionists.
18. Lack of sufficient capital to finance their activities.
19. Tropical diseases like malaria killed many abolitionists.
20. Resettling the Freed slaves was not easy, that is to say, no accommodation.
21. Some people preferred remaining as slaves. They were not sure of the conditions outside slavery.
22. Slave trade had more or less become a tradition in some societies; hence they regarded it as part of the society.
23. It was suggested that slave trade would be replaced by activities like growing of cash crops, but the crops would take long to mature, hence making the Africans suffer economically.
24. In some cases the anti-slavery squadron witnessed slaves being thrown into water as they approached slave traders’ ships. They therefore relaxed their patrol.
25. The slave trade dealers would also hide in the estuaries in seas as patrol ships would approach.

**EFFECTS OF THE ABOLITION OF SLAVE TRADE UPON THE PEOPLE OF EAST AFRICA**

1. The abolition of slave trade increased the British influence in East Africa.
2. Britain got encouraged to colonise East Africa, so as monitor slave trade abolition.
3. It also increased the coming of the white settlers into Kenya and Tanganyika as traders and farmers.
4. More missionaries came to help in the stopping of slave trade.
5. Many people accepted Christianity as a new religion.
6. Roads and railways were constructed to facilitate the abolition of slave trade. This later helped the Africans.
7. Legitimate trade was introduced in East Africa.
8. Trading companies like the German East African company (G.E.A.Co) and the Imperial East African Company (I.B.E.A.Co) came to participate in legitimate trade in east Africa.
9. Cash crops were introduced to make Africans produce raw materials to feed the European industries.
10. Africans regained their dignity and respect as human beings.
11. However, a new form of slavery resulted; that is to say, Africans were subjected to forced labour by the colonialists.
12. Security within the interior improved because there were no slave raids.
13. East Africa experienced population increase as people settled down.
14. Conflicts arose between people and their leaders who had subjected them to slave trade and slavery.
15. The influence of the Arabs and their leaders, the sultan collapsed.
16. Slave traders lost their profits which they had enjoyed from the trade. This affected them financially.

**Revision questions**

1. What was slave trade?
2. How were slaves acquired during slave trade?
3. Why was there an increase in slave trade between 1800 and1850 in East Africa?
4. What were the problems faced by slave trade abolitionists in East Africa?
5. Why was slave trade abolished?
6. What were the effects of slave trade?
7. What were the results of the abolition of slave trade in East Africa?
8. Explain the steps taken to abolish slave trade in East Africa.

**CHAPTER 12  
EUROPEANS IN EAST AFRICA**

**Introduction**  
Europeans were the whites who came into East Africa from the continent of Europe. They came from countries such as Britain, France, Germany and others. The various groups that came into east were: The explorers, missionaries, traders and imperialists

**THE EXPLORERS IN EAST AFRICA**

**REASONS FOR THE COMING OF THE EXPLORERS TO EAST AFRICA**

1. To explore means to discover, research, find out about something. Those who are involved in exploration are called explorers.
2. In East Africa, explorers were people who came from Europe to discover more about the people of East Africa and the surrounding.
3. In East Africa, the early explorers were: Burton, Speke, Grant, Stanley, Livingstone, Krapft, Rebmann, Count Teleliki, Sir Samuel Baker and Thompson among others.
4. The explorer came to East Africa because of the following reasons:
5. They came to discover the source of the Nile River because it had been a mystery disturbing European explorers.
6. Other explorers came to discover the social aspects of the East African people like cultures, beliefs and customs.
7. Some of the explorers were Christians who came to spread the word of God.
8. They came to discover the commercial and economic values of the East Africa like minerals, soils and trade.
9. They came to find out how the East African leaders related with foreigners.
10. Others were also aware of the trading activities in East Africa and therefore they wanted to get items like gold, ostrich feathers, human labour and so on.
11. Other explorers were looking for fertile soils, where to carry out agriculture in order to produce raw materials for their industries.
12. Some of them also came to look for areas for settlement of excess population.
13. Others came to identify navigable rivers and lakes, which would assist in the movement of the Europeans like missionaries, imperialists, and traders. Such rivers would include: the Congo, Niger, and Nile Rivers.
14. They came to find ways of starting a legitimate trade with the people of East Africa after the decline of the long distance trade.
15. They came to revenge on the Arab activities in East Africa, for example they never wanted the Arabs to spread Islamic religion into the interior.
16. Others came to widen their knowledge about the area the East African people live in.
17. They came to win prestige from their home countries as discoverers of great physical features in East Africa like mountains, lakes and rivers among others.
18. Some explorers took risks because East Africa was regarded to be a “Whiteman’s grave”.
19. They came as colonial agents to look for territories on behalf of their home governments.
20. They came because of the good reports made by the earlier Portuguese explorers, who had come to the coast.

**EXPLORERS AND THE MYSTERY OF THE SOURCE OF THE NILE RIVER**

1. The issue of the Nile River remained a big problem to the European explorers.
2. The issue of the Nile River became certain when Ptolemy first suggested that River Nile originates from a lake. This was in A.D 1.
3. John Leander and Richard Burton proved that the Nile River did not have any connection with the Niger River.
4. In 1849, Edhart drew an accurate map of East Africa showing the lake system of East Africa, and this increased a lot of interest in Europe about the source of the Nile River.
5. The mystery of the source of the Nile was later solved through a number of journeys made by various explorers.
6. In 1856, the Royal Geographical Society (R.G.S) asked Richard Burton and John Speke to come to East Africa and locate the source of the Nile.
7. In 1857, the two who had already arrived at the east African coast, set off from Zanzibar to Tabora.
8. In February, 1858 they reached Lake Tanganyika where they discovered that it was not the source of River Nile.
9. In July 1858, Speke left Burton at Tabora because Burton was sick. He travelled to Mwanza where he saw a big lake and named it Victoria, after the Queen of England.
10. When Speke came back to Tabora, he told Burton that he had discovered a big lake in the interior and that it was the source of the Nile River but Burton refused to believe him.
11. They quarrelled over the matter and they went back in February as enemies.
12. In 1860 Speke was sent back for the second journey by the Royal Geographical Society (R.G.S) to prove his claim. He was escorted by James Grant.
13. In September 1860, they set off from Bagamoyo and reached Karagwe on the shores of Lake Victoria. In October 1860 Grant fell sick while here.
14. Speke left Grant at Karagwe and he continued to the palace of Mutesa I of Buganda.
15. He was later joined by James Grant in May 1862.
16. On 28th October 1862, the two moved up the Nile and they became the first Europeans to see the source of the Nile River.
17. Speke thus solved the mystery of the Nile River which had disturbed the Europeans for many years.
18. Meanwhile earlier, Sir Samuel Baker and his wife had also tried to solve the mystery of the Nile River Source by tracing the river from its mouth to the source.
19. On 14th march 1864, Baker and his wife travelled and reached a lake which they named after the King of England, Albert and claimed it was the source of the Nile River.
20. Later Baker and his wife saw Kabalega falls which they renamed Murchison falls.
21. 1n 1862 Livingstone was asked to come to Africa and find the truth about the Nile River.
22. He was sent because people had not believed the story of Speke about the source of the Nile River. By then Speke had died and there was no body to defend his claim.
23. Even Baker had not seen the source of the Nile River so there was no proof of the claim of Speke’s claim.
24. Livingstone started his journey in 1866 from the North of River Ruvuma looking for the source of river Nile.
25. In November 1871 Stanley was sent to look for Livingstone who was thought to be dead.
26. In 1875 he reached Lake Victoria and proved beyond doubt that it was the source of the Nile River.
27. In 1876 he also proved that Lake Tanganyika had no connection with the Nile River.
28. Thus a number of expeditions helped the explorers to solve the mystery of the Nile River source which had disturbed the Europeans for long.

**PROBLEMS THAT THE EXPLORERS ENCOUNTERED IN EAST AFRICA**

The explorers faced the following problems while in East Africa:

1. They faced a problem of language barrier whereby they knew the East African languages nor did the East African people know theirs. Besides they lacked interpreters, Communication with the local people therefore became difficult.
2. They faced a problem of transport, whereby there were no roads, cars and other means of transport to move the long distances. It was not easy to move on foot.
3. Many of the explorers suffered from homesickness, because they had spent many years in East Africa without going back to Europe.
4. In addition, there was a problem of loneliness and lack of company, because the East African people feared they were ghosts and always ran away from them.
5. There was a problem of poor climatic conditions, where some areas were very hot and others very cold hence making them uncomfortable and in most cases fall sick.
6. The explorers always had quarrels among themselves, for example Speke and Burton disagreed over the issue of the Nile River source. They even became enemies.
7. They lacked food and clean water for drinking while in East Africa.
8. There was also shortage of funds to buy other necessities like food, yet communication back home for more supplies was not easy.
9. They also faced a problem of relief, for example Mountains and river valleys were not easy to cross. They therefore delayed their movements.
10. Sometimes they would get lost in the thick forests as they also did not know the Geography of East Africa quite well.
11. They did not also have porters to carry their luggage. Sometimes those who offered to assist them would run away with them.
12. They, explorers, did not also get descent accommodation. Many were not welcomed to the palaces of the African kings and chiefs.
13. There was a problem of tropical diseases. Most explorers suffered from diseases like malaria and sleeping in areas near lakes and rivers.
14. The explorers also faced a problem of hostile tribes who always attacked them, for example the Turkana, Masai and Nandi.
15. They faced a problem of wild animals like lions, leopards and many others, for example Thompson and his servants were attacked and seriously wounded by a buffalo in Tanganyika.
16. Some African chiefs disturbed them a lot, for example Sir Samuel Baker and his wife were detained briefly in Bunyoro.
17. They were also opposed by the Arabs at the East African coast. They thought that the explorers had come to compete with them in trade.

**ACHIEVEMENTS OR THE EFFECTS OF THE EXPLORERS IN EAST AFRICA**

1. The effects of the explorers were both negative and positive.
2. The explorers opened way for the coming the coming of the missionaries to East Africa, for example, it was Stanley who visited Mutesa I of Buganda and convinced him to allow the Christian missionaries to come to Buganda.
3. The explorers also preached the word of God while in East Africa.
4. They also attracted European traders who came and decampaigned slave trade so as to introduce legitimate trade.
5. The explorers introduced new crops, for example cotton, coffee and many others.
6. They recommended some African land for European settlement, for example Kikuyu land in Kenya.
7. They discovered the physical features of East Africa like the source of the Nile River, mountains and many others.
8. They solved the mystery of the source of the Nile River. Speke discovered and later Stanley proved that river Nile originates from Lake Victoria.
9. They also gave new names to East African physical features, for example Lake Nalubaale was renamed Victoria, after the Queen of England.
10. They also attracted European colonialists through their reports which they gave about East Africa, for example about the existence of minerals and fertile soils.
11. The explorers also decampaigned slave trade and slavery in East Africa. This led to its abolition.
12. They made friendship with most African societies, they befriended the Baganda and this made the Baganda to be collaborators.
13. The explorers discovered the routes of the Long distance trade that were later used by the missionaries and colonialists.

**ROLE OF THE EXPLORERS IN THE COLONIZATION OF EAST AFRICA**

The explorers played a big role in the colonization of East Africa.

1. In East Africa, the explorers were: Burton, Speke, Grant, Stanley, Livingstone, Kraft, Rebmann, Count Teleliki, Sir Samuel Baker and Thompson among others.
2. The explorers discovered navigable rivers and lakes and passed this information to their home governments.
3. They discovered East African economic potentials and passed the information home.
4. The explorers reported about the inhuman slave trade and this forced their home governments to come to East Africa to stop it.
5. They formed exploration societies, for example the Royal Geographical Society, which later extended colonial interest to different parts of East Africa.
6. Henry Morton Stanley, an explorer convinced Mutesa I of Buganda to allow missionaries to come to Buganda yet missionaries were agents of colonialism.
7. Missionaries held meetings in Europe and encouraged their home government to come and take control of East Africa.
8. Some explorers signed treaties with East African leaders, hence colonialism.
9. They also exposed the hospitality of some communalities, for example the Baganda from whom the colonialists started work.
10. Explorers like John Edhart drew the map of East African showing the lake systems. This was later used by the colonialists to carry out the partition of East Africa.
11. They discovered the source of River Nile which was of great importance to the colonialists.
12. They reported hostile kings like Kabalega of Bunyoro kingdom and Mwanga of Buganda kingdom.
13. They also revealed hostile tribes to their home governments, for example the Masai, Nandi, and Karamojong among others.
14. Some explorers built military bases or Forts, for example Sir Samuel Baker built a fort at Patiko which was later used by the colonial army and administrators as their Headquarters.
15. Others worked as administrators, for example Sir Samuel Baker became the governor of Equatorial province.

**Revision questions**

1. What were the reasons for the coming of the European explorers to East Africa?
2. How did the European explorers try to solve the mystery of the source of River Nile?
3. What problems did the European explorers face while in East Africa?
4. What were the achievements of the Explorers in East Africa?
5. What role did the European explorers play in the colonization of east Africa?

**THE EUROPEAN CHRISTIAN MISSIONARIES**

**REASONS FOR THE COMING OF THE CHRISTIAN MISSIONARIES TO EAST AFRICA**

1. The Christian missionaries were the European groups who came to East Africa to spread the word of God.
2. Several groups of missionaries came to E. Africa and they included: The church missionary society, the Holy Ghost Fathers, London missionary society, the white fathers and the Methodist fathers.
3. Among missionary individuals were: Father Lourdel, Dr David Livingstone, John Kraft, John Rebmann, James Grant, Henry Stanley, Richard Burton
4. The need to spread their gospel, that is to say Christianity, made them to come to East Africa.
5. The formation of the missionary groups like Church Missionary Society, Roman Catholic Church, and University Mission to Central Africa among others forced the missionaries to come to East Africa.
6. Civilization mission. The need to spread their cultures that were believed to be superior to those of East African people.
7. Need to check on the spread of Islam in East Africa.
8. Need to introduce legitimate trade.
9. Following the emergence of industrial revolution, transport means were invented and this made transport easy, hence encouraging the Christian missionaries.
10. The need to stop the barbaric slave trade which was making the east African people to suffer.
11. There was also need to stop the inter-tribal wars which were taking place in East Africa.
12. Need to know about the East African region through adventure and exploration.
13. They claimed to have come to stop in human East African cultures like killing of twins and human sacrifice among others.
14. Others came as agents of colonialism, that is to say, to administer the territories on behalf of their mother countries.
15. Yet others came to Search for employment opportunities in East Africa.
16. They claimed to have come to resettle the freed slaves in E. Africa.
17. Need to prepare East African people for partition.
18. Need to find out the economic potentials in East Africa. Some were traders.
19. Need to teach Africans how to read and write.
20. The Success of the first missionary groups encouraged others to come.
21. The French revolution that introduced the idea of equality, freedom and brotherhood also forced the Christians from France to come to east Africa and spread such ideas.
22. Requests made by some East African chiefs and kings, for example in Buganda, Mutesa I in 1875 wrote a letter to England asking the Christian missionaries to come to Buganda.

**REASONS WHY KABAKA MUTESA I INVITED THE CHRISTIAN MISSIONARIES INTO BUGANDA**

1. In 1875, Henry Morton Stanley visited Buganda and had a meeting with Kabaka Mutesa one.
2. After Stanley’s advice, Mutesa I wrote a letter to England requesting for the missionaries to come to Buganda.
3. Following the invitation, between 1876 and 1877, the Church Missionary Society under the leadership of Reverend CT Wilson and Shergold Smith arrived in Buganda.
4. Later in 1879, the Catholic White Fathers from France arrived under the leadership of Father Lourdel and Brother Amans.

The Christian missionaries were invited because:

1. Mutesa I wanted to strengthen his position by acquiring guns from the missionaries.
2. He expected the missionaries to teach him how to make his own guns.
3. He expected the missionaries to train his soldiers and equip them with the best military skills
4. To be able to use their influence and fight Bunyoro under Omukama Kabalega
5. He was afraid of pressure from Egypt who wanted to colonise Buganda, so he hoped to use the missionaries to defeat them.
6. He needed prestige and respect from his fellow chiefs.
7. He expected to receive gifts from Christian missionaries.
8. He needed to use Christian missionaries to check on Muslims who were becoming too arrogant.
9. He expected Christian missionaries to teach his people how to read and write.
10. He was tired of the demands from traditional religion. He needed a change in religion.
11. The need by Mutesa I to use the missionaries to teach his people technical skills.
12. Mutesa I wished to trade with the Christian missionaries so as to further develop the economy of Buganda.
13. Mutesa I wanted the Christian missionaries to teach his people new farming methods.
14. He had a hospitable heart towards foreigners. The friendly nature of Mutesa I, therefore forced him to invite missionaries to his kingdom.
15. Mutesa I expected some gifts from the Christian missionaries, for example beads, mirrors and clothes among others.
16. He had been convinced by H.M Stanley that Christian missionaries would be   
    good for the safety of his kingdom.

**ACTIVITIES AND WORK OF THE CHRISTIAN MISSIONARIES IN EAST AFRICA**

1. The Christian missionaries taught and spread Christianity among different communities in East Africa.
2. They built churches as centres for spreading Christianity and worshipping God.
3. They fought against slave trade and resettled slaves at Frere, Bagamoyo and Zanzibar.
4. The Christian missionaries introduced legitimate trade after their abolition of slave trade.
5. They built schools for Africans and taught religion, arithmetic, writing and reading.
6. They trained civil servants, for example doctors, nurses, teachers, and drivers among others.
7. They encouraged technical education, where they taught the Africans the knowledge of brick making, brick laying, farming, cookery, and craft work among others.
8. They translated the bible into local languages, for example to Kiswahili and Luganda.
9. They also encouraged the spread of western culture and values, for example fashions, eating habits, dressing and so on.
10. The Christian missionaries discouraged African cultural practices like human sacrifice, murder of twins, worshipping idols and witchcraft.
11. They assisted the colonial rulers to sign political agreements, for example Buganda agreement of 1900.
12. They made East African people to accept colonial rule through their sweet preaching like “blessed are the humble for the kingdom of God is theirs”. That is why it is said that the flag followed the cross.
13. They built hospitals and health centres to provide treatment to mostly the Africans.
14. The Christian missionaries then introduced the use of modern medicine to cure tropical diseases, for example quinine to cure malaria.
15. They constructed roads for easy movement of people and transportation of commodities.
16. The Christian missionaries introduced new crops such as coffee, cotton, tea and tobacco among others.
17. They introduced plantation farming, that is to say farming on a large scale.

**EFFECTS OF MISSIONARY ACTIVITIES UPON THE EAST AFRICAN PEOPLE**

1. The effects were both positive and negative.
2. They cleared the way for scramble and partition by preaching aspects like love one another, that softened African minds and hearts.
3. They converted many people to Christianity.
4. They divided the people of East African along religious lines, for example Protestants and Catholics, believers and non believers.
5. Arithmetic, Reading and writing were learnt.
6. Built several schools in East, among which are St. Mary’s College, Kisubi, Gayaza High School, King’s College, Budo among others in Uganda.
7. Technical and vocational education was learnt by the East African people.
8. They improved on the health of the East African people through construction of hospitals.
9. They also introduced plantation farming in East Africa and many people took up the system.
10. New cash crops were introduced into E. Africa, among which were cotton, coffee, tea, and others.
11. New languages were introduced, for example English, French and so on.
12. The Products of missionary education championed nationalistic struggles in East Africa, for example Jomo Kenyatta of Kenya, Julius Nyerere of Tanganyika and Benedicto Kiwanuka of Uganda.
13. Made efforts to abolish slave trade in East Africa.
14. Missionaries influenced some local leaders to collaborate with the colonial matters, for example Apollo Kaggwa and Semei Kakungulu were very close to the missionaries.
15. They improved on the standards of living of the people of East Africa through the crops and education introduced, because many people were employed.
16. They improved on transport and communication as they constructed many roads in East Africa.
17. They called for protection from their home government hence scramble and partition of East Africa took place.
18. They were involved in the politics of the East African people, for example they participated in the signing of the 1900 Buganda agreement, and they fought Kabaka Mwanga and so on.
19. They introduced legitimate trade in East Africa after abolition of slave trade
20. Traditional customs were undermined by the teachings of Christian missionaries.
21. East African people turned their loyalty and respect away from their traditional leaders to the Christian missionaries.
22. They introduced printing press that promoted African literature.
23. They also promoted agriculture by introducing new farming methods.
24. They Translated the Bible into African languages, for example in Kiswahili, Luganda and other prominent East African languages.
25. They Built Churches in East Africa that acted as religious and social centres.
26. Through their preaching, they undermined African cultural values.
27. East African superstition or witchcraft that the Christian missionaries at first feared, were destroyed by the teachings of Christian missionaries.
28. East African economic position was improved as new crops were introduced.
29. They facilitated loss of East African countries when they invited their home government to come and give them protection.
30. They contributed to the work of exploration and discoveries, for Kraft discovered Mountain Kenya while Rebmann discovered Mountain Kilimanjaro.

**PROBLEMS AND CHALLENGES FACED BY CHRISTIAN MISSIONARIES IN EAST AFRICA**

1. Tropical diseases, for example malaria that killed them. Kraft lost his wife and child as a result of malaria attack.
2. Harsh tropical climate they were not used to was also a big problem.
3. They were few in number and hence lacked enough manpower.
4. Inadequate supply of resources especially food and drinking water.
5. They also lacked money to buy whatever they needed.
6. Poor transport and communication.
7. Impenetrable forests. Some of them got lost in the thick forests they would try to cross.
8. Hostile tribes like the Masai, Banyoro and Nandi among others.
9. Wild animals at Tsavo that ate them.
10. Inter-tribal wars that existed in East Africa, for example Buganda and Bunyoro were involved in wars. They made missionary work difficult.
11. Stiff competition from Islam. The Moslems especially at the coast of East Africa opposed the Christian missionaries.
12. Africa competition from traditional religion, where some people wanted to maintain their traditional religion. Christianity opposed African practices like polygamy unlike Islam.
13. In some cases they feared African magic and witchcraft. This discouraged the missionaries.
14. Language barrier due to the fact that the missionaries never understood the East African languages and hence poor communication.
15. Lack of geographical knowledge about parts of East Africa.
16. Hostile East African leaders who sometimes killed them, for example Kabaka Mwanga of Buganda killed a number of Christian converts.
17. Hostility from the Arabs traders who feared that the Christian missionaries had to come compete with them in trade.
18. Rivalry among themselves which led to wars such as Wafaransa - Wangeleza wars in Buganda.
19. Their work was restricted to some areas, especially in the kings’ palaces.
20. Distance from East Africa to their home countries was too big, hence they were always home- sick.
21. African people were not united and the spreading of the gospel became difficult.
22. Some areas were too remote like in villages; this made extension of the missionary work difficult.
23. Unfaithful porters who stole their property.
24. They were mistaken to be coming to take over power of some East African leaders, for example Bishop Hannington was killed having bee suspected by Kabaka Mwanga to be an imperialists.
25. Difficult terrain like the hills and valleys posed a big barrier to their movement.

**ROLE OF CHRISTIAN MISSIONARIES IN THE SCRAMBLE AND PARTITION OF EAST AFRICA**

1. Missionary groups which came to East Africa included: the Church missionary Society (CMS), Roman Catholic Missionary (RCM) among others.
2. They helped in signing of treaties, for example Bishop Tucker assisted in signing of the Buganda agreement of 1900 which put Buganda directly under the British control.
3. They softened the hearts of the East African people through their preaching like “leaders come from God”, and “blessed are those who are humble for the Kingdom of God is theirs”.
4. The Christian missionaries identified organised kingdoms and informed their governments about them.
5. They helped to set up infrastructures like roads that imperialists used.
6. The Christian missionaries built schools, which became centres of instruction, where Africans were taught to obey whites hence colonialism.
7. They also helped to stop slave trade, which glorified or made the white men to look very important in the eyes of the East African people, hence facilitating scramble and partition.
8. They promoted agriculture, which formed the foundation upon which the economy and income of the whites depended.
9. The Christian missionaries promoted legitimate trade that encouraged colonialists to come to East Africa. Their teachings turned East Africans against their traditional rulers, hence facilitating the scramble.
10. They made reports about the economic potentials in East Africa, which encouraged the colonialists.
11. Their teachings created a class of collaborators, clerks and interpreters among others who all facilitated colonization of East Africa.
12. The Christian missionaries translated African languages, hence making communication with colonialists easy.
13. They called their home governments to come and take over.
14. Their religions divided the East African people, hence making them too weak to resist colonialism.
15. They effected the policy of effective control of East Africa, as agreed upon in the Berlin conference.
16. They co operated with other European traders like the IBEACo and the GEACo. They gave financial assistance to them when they ran bankrupt.
17. In some areas they offered the east African people material goods like clothes, shoes, mirrors, and every white man was considered good and they welcomed the colonialists.
18. They occupied the most fertile land and they later handed it over to their home governments.
19. Earlier missionaries carried out exploration work and discovered navigable rivers, which they revealed to their home governments, hence colonialism.

**THE POLITICAL – RELIGIOUS WARS IN BUGANDA OF 1888-1892**

**(WAFARANZA-WANGLEZA WARS IN BUGANDA 1888-1892)**

**CAUSES OF THE WARS**

1. By 1888 there were four major religious groups in Buganda namely: the Protestants from England, The Catholics from France, The Islam from the Arab world and African traditional religion that was already in place.
2. Between 1888 and 1892, the four religious groups were in conflicts that resulted into wars.

The causes of these wars were;

1. The religious groups were competing for political control over Buganda.
2. The Arabs in Buganda took advantage of their long stay within Buganda to win the support of the Kabaka. This brought wars with other religious groups.
3. The death of Mutesa I in 1884 increased conflicts and hatred among different religious group. Mutesa I had the skills of handling problems within the kingdom.
4. The rise of Mwanga to power after the death of Mutesa led to the wars. Mwanga was young and in-experienced and did not know how to handle serious issues. He was arrogant, proud and inconsistent. He even showed no serious interest in matters of the other three foreign religions.
5. The failure of the missionaries to give weapons and military assistance to Mutesa I against his enemies, Bunyoro and Egypt reduced his, for the Christians.
6. The leaders of Buganda kingdom had a weakness, that is to say they confined the different religious groups at the palace and this led to conflicts and later wars.
7. The Moslems and the Christians had traditional enmity between them and this led to wars in Buganda.
8. The presence of armed Catholics forced Lugard to give weapons to the Protestants and this increased the war situation.
9. The killing of the first converts (martyrs), forced the Christians to unite together against Kabaka Mwanga who had killed their friends.
10. The killing of Bishop Hannington in 1886 in Busoga forced the Christians to open war on the king.
11. There was a rumour that Mwanga was willing to join the protestant religion. This increased the conflicts against the Protestants by the Catholics and the Moslems as they struggled to win the favour of the king.
12. Mwanga had decided to expel all religious groups, that is to say the Protestants the Catholics and the Moslems from Buganda. This forced the religious groups to open war against him.
13. The role of traditional believers led to the wars, because they blamed Christianity for discouraging African cultures.
14. The different teaching and preaching of different religious groups caused the war.
15. The Protestants and the Catholics also had traditional enmity between themselves right from Europe. This enmity was transferred to Buganda when they came, hence leading to works.
16. The Christian missionaries were struggling to get more areas to set up their mission stations and this led to wars.
17. There was a struggle to get more followers among the various religious groups.
18. Imperial rivalry that existed between France and Britain. These countries were just behind the curtains as the wars went on. They transferred their aggression in Europe to Buganda.
19. Fredrick Lugard’s direct Sympathy and military support he gave to the Protestants. In early 1891, he gave more than 400 guns to the Protestants with aim of fighting the Catholics.

**ORGANIZATION OR COURSE OF POLITICAL RELIGIOUS WARS**

1. In 1875, Henry Morton Stanley visited Buganda and had a meeting with Kabaka Mutesa I.
2. After Stanley’s advice, Mutesa I wrote a letter to England requesting for the missionaries to come to Buganda.
3. Following the invitation, between 1876 and 1877, the Church Missionary Society under the leadership of Reverend CT Wilson and Shergold Smith arrived in Buganda.
4. Later in 1879, the Catholic White Fathers from France arrived under the leadership of Father Lourdel and Brother Amans.
5. By 1888 there were four major religious groups in Buganda namely: the Protestants from England, The Catholics from France, The Islam from the Arab world and African traditional religion that was already in place.
6. Between 1888 and 1892, the four religious groups were in conflicts that resulted into wars.
7. The Protestants and Catholics were already in competition for political superiority within the Kabaka’s palace.
8. Kabaka Mwanga who took over leadership from his father Mutesa I, found this kind of situation.
9. The Muslims made the condition worse by telling Mwanga that the Christians had come to take over his Kingdom.
10. Mwanga ordered people who had converted to Christianity to denounce their faith in the new religions. Bishop Hannington was murdered under unclear circumstances in1885.
11. In 1886 those converts who refused to denounce their new religion were burnt alive in Namugongo.
12. Mwanga was determined to send away all the foreign religious groups from Buganda, the Christians and Muslims.
13. After the religious group discovered his plans, they made a combined effort against him. He was overthrown and replaced by Kiwewa.
14. Kiwewa was later overthrown by the Muslims who had enthroned him because he had refused to be circumcised. The Muslims had more power.
15. Kalema was installed after Kiwewa was deposed. The Muslims turned against the Catholics and Protestants and chased them away to Ankole under the leadership of Honerat and Apollo Kaggwa respectively.
16. The Christians re-organised themselves and overpowered the Muslims and re-instated Mwanga in 1890 with a lot of Catholic support.
17. However, in 1890 Captain Fredrick Lugard came to Uganda as a representative of the IBEACo and he tricked Mwanga into signing a treaty.
18. Lugard also armed the Protestants and the Catholics and the Muslims were defeated.

**EFFECTS OF POLITICAL RELIGIOUS WARS IN BUGANDA**

1. The effects were political, social and economic in nature.
2. The effects were also positive and negative effects.
3. They led to the total defeat of Moslem and the Arabs.
4. The Moslems could only matter when it came to slaughtering animals.
5. Protestants emerged out of the wars victorious.
6. Protestants gained a dominant position of Uganda politics since then up to date.
7. The war also led to the defeat of the Catholics in Buganda.
8. The wars also undermined traditional religion in Buganda, and as a result Christianity increased.
9. The Political-religious wars in Buganda also undermined the powers of the Kabaka by reducing them.
10. The political- religious wars forced Mwanga to resist the British rule in 1897 as a way of overthrowing the British in Buganda.
11. The wars also undermined the powers of the traditional chiefs in Buganda. Political powers changed and went to the young Christian leaders, for example Apollo Kaggwa became powerful.
12. They led to the signing of the Buganda agreement of 1900, in order to bring peace in Buganda. To end the political and social turmoil or confusion, the Buganda agreement of 1900 was signed that finally divided the political destiny of Uganda.
13. The conflicts disrupted peace which had existed in Buganda for long.
14. The wars made Buganda a centre of missionary activities, where Christianity was spread to other parts of the country like Tooro, Ankole and others.
15. They led to the partition of East Africa as a way of settling the conflicts that had existed.
16. The wars forced Lugard to give land to the Catholics as a way of making them happy.
17. The religious wars, led to the formation of political parties based on religion or along religious lines.
18. The wars increased disunity among the people in Buganda and Uganda at large.
19. They led to serious loss of lives.
20. There was serious destruction of property in Buganda
21. The wars led to religious discrimination in all sectors, for example education, health and many other areas. Services were performed to the communities basing on religion. Schools were given and run on religious sectarianism, for example St Mary’s College, Kisubi was for Catholics, while Buddo King’s College was for Protestants and so on.
22. Mwanga was made more perplexed and confused as he did not know which religious group he was to follow.
23. He was force to become a Christian and while in exile he was named Daniel.
24. The wars introduced the use of guns in the affairs of Buganda and later in Uganda.
25. For some time, insecurity caught up the whole of Buganda.
26. Later political developments relied more on religious affiliation, that is to say UPC for Protestants, DP for Catholics and so on
27. The wars greatly divided Buganda from then up to date.
28. Political offices were to be shared with a basis of religion, for example, Finance Minister “Muwanika” was to be a protestant, and Prime Minister “Katikiro” was also to be a protestant and so on.
29. The war also formalized the scramble and partition of Uganda. The missionaries got a good reason to call in their home governments to officially take over.
30. The wars led to refugee problems into Uganda, where people moved away from Buganda to other areas, for example Muslims went as far as Ankole.

**Revision questions**

1. Why did the Christian missionaries come to East Africa?
2. Why did Mutesa I invite Christian missionaries into Buganda?
3. What were the problems faced by Christian Missionaries in E. Africa?
4. What were the causes of political-religious wars in Buganda?
5. Describe the organization of the political-religious wars.
6. What were the effects of the political-religious wars?
7. Describe the activities of the Christian missionaries in East Africa?
8. How did the missionary activities affect the people of East Africa?
9. Explain the role of Christian missionaries in the scramble and partition of E. Africa.

**EUROPEAN TRADERS IN EAST AFRICA (CHARTERED COMPANIES)**

**REASONS FOR THE FORMATION OF CHARTERED COMPANIES**

1. Chartered companies were trading associations which were given permission to operate business in East Africa on behalf of their respective home governments.
2. The two trading companies operated in East Africa. These were the Imperial British East African Company (IBEACo) and German East African Company (GEACo).
3. The IBEACo was established in 1888 and it was under the leadership of William Mackinnon. It was charged with the responsibilities of carrying out trade and administration in Kenya and Uganda behalf of the British.
4. Its leadership was later taken over by Captain Fredrick Lugard, a retired army officer who had served in the army in India where Britain also had a colony.
5. GEACo started work in Zanzibar in 1884 and with time it moved to Tanganyika mainland. It was under the leadership of Dr. Carl peters.
6. The chartered companies were formed to control the area of interest for their respective governments.
7. They were also formed to protect missionaries and traders who were operating in East Africa.
8. The trading companies were formed to sign as many treaties as possible with the African leaders.
9. Chartered companies would also promote trade on behalf of their home government in East Africa.
10. They were also supposed to bring as many areas as possible under the control of their respective governments.
11. For effective trade in East Africa, the chartered companies were formed to improve on communication.
12. It was also supposed to solve the conflicts between the Catholic and Protestants missionaries in Buganda kingdom.
13. Through the Chartered companies law and order would be established in East Africa.
14. The fight against slave trade would also be properly handled by the chartered companies.
15. They were formed to encourage the spread of Christianity in East Africa.

**ROLE PLAYED BY THE CHARTERED COMPANIES IN THE COLONISATION OF EAST AFRICA**

1. Traders from European countries into East Africa were clearly known as the chartered Companies.
2. They were trading organizations which had been given rights or permission (charter), to carry out trade and administration in East African territories, on behalf of their home governments.
3. In East Africa the major Chartered companies were: the Imperial British East African Company (IBEACo) and German East African Company (GEACo).
4. Chartered Companies were business enterprises that were formed mainly to curve out colonies for their respective European countries.
5. IBEACO was founded by William Mackinnon in 1888. The GEACO was founded by Karl Peters in 1884.
6. They signed a number of treaties with African chiefs, the GEACO signed Usagala, where as IBEACO signed the 1901 treaty with Nkore.
7. They promoted legitimate trade, the profits of which attracted colonialists.
8. They stopped slavery and hence made Africans believe that Europeans were very good, later they used this to colonize East Africa.
9. The Chartered companies promoted agriculture upon which the colonial economy depended.
10. They also provided information concerning Africa’s minerals and other resources that encouraged the scramble.
11. They set up infrastructures like roads that greatly aided colonization.
12. When they became bankrupt, they surrendered to their home governments to come and take over.
13. They set up administrative headquarters; forts and garrisons, which all quickened the scramble and partition.
14. They offered protection to the missionaries who were the fore runners of colonialism in East Africa.
15. Their rivalries gave their home countries a chance to occupy East Africa.
16. The Chartered companies acted as experimental governments for the colonial masters.
17. They fought and defeated rebellious societies, for example IBEACO under Lugard fought Bunyoro, the Nandi and others.
18. They financed colonial administration on behalf of their home governments. They constructed administrative posts, for example IBEACO built an administrative post at old Kampala and at Rabai.
19. In 1890, when the GEACo failed to suppress revolts at the coast of East Africa, it withdrew and called for the German government to take over.

**ROLE PLAYED BY CARL PETERS AND CAPTAIN FREDRICK LUGARD IN THE COLONISATION OF EAST AFRICA**

1. **CARL PETERS**
2. Carl peters was the one who established the German East African Company (GEACo).
3. He was also a member of the German colonization society which was formed in 1884 to defend the German imperial interest in Tanganyika.
4. It was Carl Peters who signed a number of treaties with local chiefs of Usagara, Uziga and many others. The treaties signed, confirmed German interest in those areas.
5. The German colonization society of Carl peters was given permission to carry out trade and administration on behalf of the Germans in Tanganyika.
6. He therefore promoted trade on behalf of the Germans.
7. The Germans in Tanganyika were faced with a number of early resistances like the Hehe and Abushiri. It was Carl Peters who overcame these rebellions.
8. Carl Peters gave the Christian missionaries a lot of support as they carried out their work in Tanganyika.
9. He persuaded the Sultan of Zanzibar to accept the German to control Witu in the Northern Coast. He therefore forced the sultan to accept the German rule at the coast of East Africa.
10. When the British claimed Witu, Carl Peters accepted to occupy Heligoland in the North Sea. He accepted to give up Witu to the British.
11. He signed a treaty with Kabaka Mwanga of Buganda. The treaty would place Buganda under direct German control.
12. He was also influential in the signing of the second treaty, Anglo-German agreement with the British in 1890 in which he dropped the idea of claiming Buganda Kingdom for the Germans.
13. Carl Peters also signed a treaty with Nabongo Mumia of the Wanga Kingdom in Western Kenya.
14. The treaties Carl Peters signed with Buganda and Wanga Kingdoms forced Britain to take control of those areas because it appeared the Germans were threatening the British control over them.
15. It was Carl Peters who forced the Germans to introduce direct rule in Tanganyika.
16. He facilitated the abolition of slave trade and the introduction of legitimate trade.
    * 1. **CAPTAIN FREDRICK LUGARD**
17. Captain Fredrick Lugard was a retired soldier who was sent to Buganda by the British government to work as agent of the Imperial British East African Company (IBEACo).
18. He majorly worked tirelessly to defend the British interests in Uganda through out the colonial interest.
19. Fredrick Lugard stopped Buganda from falling under the control the GEACo of Carl Peters, the leader.
20. Lugard signed a treaty with the Kabaka of Buganda, Mwanga and this forced him to acknowledge the IBEACo authority. This brought Buganda under the control of the British.
21. He also signed a treaty with Omugabe Ntare in August 1891. The treaty brought Ankole under the Company rule.
22. Fredrick Lugard on behalf of the British government extended colonial rule to Tooro where he was able to installed Omukama Daudi Kasagama who was overthrown by the Banyoro.
23. He was able to defeat Kabalega of Bunyoro with the support of Semei Kakungulu, an influential collaborator to the colonial rule.
24. When the religious wars occurred between the Protestants and Catholics, it was Lugard who settled the conflicts between the two. He supported the Protestants against the Catholics by giving them guns.
25. When the Catholics were defeated by the Protestants, Lugard calmed them down by giving them land.
26. Fredrick Lugard united all the Christian groups in Buganda against the Muslims who had support from Bunyoro Kingdom.
27. He generally protected the Christian missionaries in Buganda against being attacked by other communities who were opposing them.
28. He built a number of Forts in the areas under his control for protection and defense, for example he constructed a Fort at Old Kampala.
29. Lugard was able to protect the Nile which the British were interested in controlling. He made sure that no other colonial power controlled its source and the mouth.
30. He convinced the Sudanese mercenaries to work with him to overcome rebellions in the British areas of interest.
31. Captain Fredrick Lugard was able to develop trading activities in Buganda and other areas under British control.
32. He re-instated Mwanga who had been overthrown and forced him in 1892 to sign another treaty giving him official control of Buganda Kingdom.
33. He wrote a book “Dual Mandate in Tropical Africa”. The book became the starting point of the British policy of indirect rule in East Africa.
34. Lugard went back in 1892 and campaigned strongly for the British safeguarding and control over Uganda.

**PROBLEMS OR CHALLENGES FACED BY CHARTERED COMPANIES IN EAST AFRICA.**

1. They lacked enough manpower.
2. The chartered companies also lacked enough funds to carry out their activities.
3. There were frequent rebellions in East Africa. This made their work difficult.
4. Poor means of transport was also another problem that was faced by the Christian missionaries.
5. Stiff competition among the companies themselves was yet another problem.
6. Tropical diseases too, disturbed the traders.
7. There were inexperienced and corrupt administrators that failed the companies.
8. Scarcity of minerals due to overexploitation.
9. Involvement in religious wars, for example in Buganda, Fredrick was involved in the religious wars between the Protestants and the Catholics.
10. Restrictions were put onto the companies.
11. Stiff competition from African traders, for example the Nyamwezi
12. There was poor housing and accommodation.
13. The distance to their home countries was too great; hence they were always home sick.
14. Lack of economic prospects in some East African areas, for example in Northern Uganda the resources were scarce.
15. Lack of geographical knowledge of some areas.
16. There was language barrier.
17. Lack of trusted agents in East Africa.
18. Hostile tribes like the Nandi and Hehe disturbed them greatly.
19. There was delay in supplies from their home governments.

**Note that** the above points can explain why chartered companies collapsed by 1904.

Students must also realise that the challenges or problems faced by the chartered companies were almost similar to the problems faced by other European groups in East Africa.   
**Revision questions**

1. Why did chartered companies come into East Africa?
2. What role did the chartered Companies play in the colonization of East Africa?
3. Explain the problems faced by the Chartered Companies in East Africa?
4. Why did the chartered companies collapse by 1904?
5. What were the effects of chartered companies in East Africa?

**CHAPTER 13  
THE SCRAMBLE FOR AND PARTITION OF EAST AFRICA**

**CAUSES FOR THE SCRAMBLE AND PARTITION OF EAST AFRICA**

1. The Scramble for East Africa was the desire and rush for colonies or areas for control in East Africa, by the European super powers.
2. In east Africa the major competitors were: Britain and Germany.
3. Partition, on the other hand refers to the process of dividing up or sharing of the East African countries between Germany and Britain.
4. The partition of East Africa took place in Europe following the Berlin conference of 1884-1885.
5. During the partition of East Africa, Germany took over Tanganyika mainland, while Britain got Uganda and Kenya.
6. When East Africa was partitioned, effective control followed.

The reasons for the scramble and partition of East Africa were:

1. East Africa was partitioned due to political, social and economic reasons.
2. It was part of the struggle that had its roots in Europe itself.
3. The emergence of Germany as a major power in Europe that upset the balance of power.
4. The search for consumer market for the goods produced by the Europeans. The East Africans were supposed to provide ready market for commodities like clothes, gun powder, and glasses among others.
5. The need for raw materials for their industries, for example coffee, cotton and sisal among others, encouraged the Europeans to come to East Africa.
6. There was also need to invest their excess capital in trade, plantation and so on.
7. East Africa was of strategic importance to many European powers.
8. There was Pressure from chartered companies, for example Carl Peters as a representative of GEACo, requested his home government to come and take over the territory.
9. Mounting pressure for protection from missionaries, traders and others.
10. Leopold’s activities in the Congo provoked the British and the Germans to come into East Africa. He wanted to take the whole of Africa.
11. The Berlin conference of 1884-85 that gave a go ahead to the scramble. It made the partition of East Africa official by apportioning the territories.
12. There was also the desire to spread western cultures.
13. Some European powers had lost territories to the most powerful countries in Europe, so they moved to East Africa to get colonies to console themselves.
14. The need to spread Christianity among the East African people was another reason for the scramble and partition.
15. There was also Need to settle the surplus population into East Africa.
16. The growth of nationalism in Europe. It became prestigious for a country in Europe to have colonies outside, because the more colonies a country had, the more powerful she was regarded to be.
17. There was also the desire to abolish slave trade from East Africa.
18. They claimed to have come to “Civilise the East Africans”, whom they claimed to be “backward and barbaric”.
19. Others simply came to carry out exploration and adventure.
20. Yet others had received good reports from the earlier explorers about the East African economic potentials. This attracted them.
21. The Discovery of minerals in some parts of South Africa made Europeans to believe that also East Africa had minerals, hence need to control.

**THE ANGLO-GERMAN CONFLICTS (1885-1890)**

**CAUSES OF THE CONFLICTS**

1. Between the two trading companies, the British East African Association (BEAA) and German East Africa Association (GEAA), serious conflicts arose. The reasons were:
2. The issue was about the strip of land of about 300 miles from the East African coast.
3. German East Africa Association (GEAA) took over the area yet British East African Association (BEAA) had made an agreement with Bargash, the sultan to trade inland.
4. The conflict was out of fear from the Germans that Britain would combine with the British South African company and push her out of Tanganyika.
5. Britain on the other hand feared that the German government would unite with German East Africa Association (GEAA) in Uganda and push her out of Kenya.
6. Britain and Germany were competing to control Uganda between 1886 and 1890.
7. The conflicts became worse when in 1890 Carl Peters the leader of German East African Company signed a treaty of friendship with Kabaka Mwanga of Buganda. This did not put Britain at rest.
8. There was an attempt by Fredrick Jackson to sign a treaty of friendship also with Mwanga but he refused. This worsened the situation.
9. The conflict also aroused out of the rumour that the German commissioner was going to visit Buganda. Britain became very sensitive to the move.
10. The failure of the first Anglo-German treaty increased the conflicts between the Britain and the Germans in East Africa.
11. The conflicts also increased when Emin Pasha, the British governor of the Egyptian Equatorial province was blocked by the Madhi. Britain knew there would be a problem. However Stanley rescued Emin Pasha.
12. The rivalry was also as a result of the presence of the missionaries in Buganda in the 1880s. They wanted protection from their respective home government.
13. East African was also strategically located, for example it was near the coast, Indian Ocean, Mediterranean Sea through the Nile River and near Far East. This attracted conflicts for control.
14. The colonial power wanted to acquire as many territories as possible because of political and military prestige attached to it.
15. There was the influence of the white settlers in Kenya and Tanganyika who pressurized their home government to extend areas of control.
16. Germany became interested in acquiring as many colonies as possible since she had just united in 1871.
17. The industrial revolution also increased demand for raw materials, markets and investment areas.
18. The discovery of minerals in south Africa made the whites to think that minerals were everywhere in Africa hence conflicts for East Africa

**HOW THE ANGLO-GERMAN CONFLICTS WERE SOLVED**

1. There were negotiations between the Germans and British. This ended in the signing of the Anglo-German agreement of 1886 and 1890.
2. The 1886 Anglo-German agreement limited the sultan’s sphere of influence to only a 10 mile coastal strip.
3. The sultan was also to have dominion over towns like Brava, Kismayu and Merca.
4. The Germans were to control the areas, ten miles coastal strip from river Ruvuma on the Tanganyika border with Malawi to River Umba on the slopes of Mount Kilimanjaro.
5. The British would control areas North of River Umba into Kenya.
6. It must be clearly understood that the 1886 Anglo-German agreement did not clearly handle Uganda’s issue. This led to another conflict.
7. It was the 1890 agreement or Heligoland treaty that resolved the issue. By this treaty Uganda went to Britain while Germany Heligoland.
8. Zanzibar, Pemba and Mafia were to be under the British control as per the agreement of 1890.
9. Uganda was declared the British protectorate.
10. The Uganda-Tanganyika boreder was extended westwards to Congo border.
11. The Anglo-German conflicts were practically solved by the 1890 agreement.
12. The colonial masters later effectively controlled their respective areas and the conflict ended.

**PROBLEMS THAT THE EUROPEANS FACED DURING THE SCRAMBLE AND PARTITION OF EAST AFRICA**

1. There was inadequate manpower.
2. Hostile leaders, for example Mwanga
3. Shortage of funds to purchase the necessary items for their survival in East Africa.
4. Lack of effective administrators
5. Rivalry among the European colonialists in some areas.
6. Hostile tribes, for example Nandi, Hehe and other.
7. Lack of trusted agents, for example Semei Kakungulu was more of an opportunist than an administrator.
8. Language barrier amongst the Africans and the Europeans.
9. Diseases like malaria and small pox were very big threats to the Europeans in East Africa.
10. Thick forests were not easy to penetrate.
11. Lack of geographical knowledge to increase the scramble.
12. Poor climatic conditions. They were not used to the East African climatic conditions.
13. Shortage of supplies like medicine and personal effects.
14. Distance between East Africa and their home governments was too big; this delayed their supplies and also made them homesick.
15. Influence of Islam, say at the coast of East Africa led to resistance.
16. Traditona1 cultures were too strong in some East African communities. Example among the Nandi hence resistance occurred.   
    **Note that** these problems were similar to those of Christian missionaries and even to those of chartered companies.

**HOW THE EUROPEAN POWERS ACQUIRED COLONIES IN EAST AFRICA.**

East Africa was colonized through the following ways.

1. Through treaty signing, for example the Buganda agreement of 1900.
2. Through use of explorers like Stanley who convinced the African leaders to accept the Christian missionaries to come, yet missionaries were agents of colonialism.
3. Through the missionaries who softened the hearts of Africans.
4. Through diplomacy, for example, among the Chagga.
5. They also used threats, intimidation and demonstration of military might or power.
6. Through use of chartered companies like IBEACO and GEACO.
7. Use of force and militarism, as the case was with Kabalega of Bunyoro kingdom.
8. Through use of collaborators like Semei Kakungulu and sir Apollo Kaggwa.
9. Through use of soldiers like Fredrick Lugard.
10. Through ruthless measures, for example the coastal towns were bombarded until they submitted.
11. They used divide and rule, for example Baganda against the Banyoro.
12. They used the system of indirect rule, where the East Africans were used to administer fellow East Africans.
13. Through developing transport and telecommunication networks.
14. By introducing taxes in East Africa to make the colonies self-reliant.
15. Through establishing military garrisons, for example Fort Portal, built by Gerald Portal.
16. Used missionaries to “Sugar Coat” the bitterness of colonial rule.
17. In Kenya, they used the white settlers who had settled in Kenya highlands to administer Kenya.
18. They used chartered companies to carry out preliminary administration.
19. Through finances from home governments.
20. Through using gifts like cloth and food that softened the hearts and minds of East Africans.
21. Through explorers who told them the wealth, the strength and weaknesses of East African societies.
22. The Berlin Conference of 1884-1885 laid down guidelines on how East Africa was to be partitioned. It was done first on paper and confirmed through a meeting.
23. By setting up their Headquarters like Kampala, Nairobi, and Dar-es-Salaam to maintain law and order.

**THE PROCESS OF THE PARTITION OF EAST AFRICA**

1. The Scramble for East Africa was the desire and rush for colonies or areas for control in East Africa, by the European super powers.
2. Partition, on the other hand refers to the process of dividing up or sharing of the East African countries between Germany and Britain.
3. The partition of East Africa took place in Europe following the Berlin conference of 1884-1885.
4. The partition of East Africa was legalized by the Berlin act of 1885 which clearly legalized Britain and Germany to extend the sphere of influence to East Africa.
5. The process was to be gradual, diplomatic and peaceful in nature.
6. In 1885, Carl Peters of Germany took over Usagara, Ulunguru, UKami and Uzugua in Tanganyika through treaty signing.
7. Carl Peters later took Witu in Kenya and part of Kilimanjaro district, this annoyed the Britain.
8. In 1886, conflicts broke out between Germany, Britain and the Sultan of Zanzibar.
9. This led to the signing of Anglo-German agreement of 1886 which made the Sultan’s strip of land which extended from ‘Cape Delgado to River Tana, Brava and the interior to be divided.
10. The Western area was resolved, hence a competition between the British and the Germans.
11. In 1890, Carl Peters, a German signed a treaty with Mwanga yet Britain had been given a Charter by the Berlin Conference in 1885 to operate there.
12. The events in Europe led to the signing of the second Anglo-German treaty, that is to say the Heligoland treaty that portioned East Africa.
13. During the partition of East Africa, Germany took over Tanganyika mainland.
14. While Britain got Uganda and Kenya.
15. Britain also took over Zanzibar, Pemba and Witu.
16. Germany took over Heligoland Island, that is to say the area towards North Sea.
17. Uganda was declared the British Protectorate in 1894.
18. Kenya became a British colony in 1895.
19. By 1900, Tanganyika was fully under the German control.

**EFFECTS OF COLONIAL RULE IN EAST AFRICA**

1. The effects were both positive and negative.
2. Effects were political, economic and social.
3. Loss of independence to EastAfrican people
4. The East African people lost their fertile land
5. It resulted into forced labour, for example in Tanzania.
6. Over taxation of the East African people that made them very poor.
7. Increased Europeans into East Africa.
8. African cultures were undermined.
9. East African chiefs and kings lost their powers, for example the Kabaka of Buganda.
10. East African people were divided up, for example the Southern and central Ugandans against the Northern Uganda.
11. They led to the spread of Christianity among the East African people.
12. They checked the spread of Islam in some areas.
13. The East Africans learnt the white man’s technology.
14. Schools were constructed
15. Hospitals were also constructed.
16. There was also introduction of new crops in East Africa, for example coffee, tea and cotton among others.
17. There was improvement in infrastructures, for example railways and roads were constructed.
18. East African minerals were fully exploited for the benefit of Europeans.
19. There was improvement in agriculture as new farming methods like crop rotation were introduced.
20. New boundaries of East Africa were drawn and as a result tribes were detribalized.
21. There was emergence of foreign languages, for example English and German.
22. The East Africans were divided along religious lines, for example Catholics and protestants
23. Colonialism also led to occurrence of many resistances, for example Maji Maji, Hehe, and Abushiri among others where several East Africans were killed.
24. It also led to the signing of very many treaties, whose implications and meanings were   
    unclear to the Africans, like the Buganda agreement of 1900.   
      
    **Revision questions**
25. Why was East Africa partitioned by the European powers in the 19thcentury?
26. What problems did Europeans face in the scramble and partition of E. Africa?
27. How did European powers acquire colonies in East Africa?
28. Describe the process how East Africa was portioned.

**THE BERLIN CONFERENCE (1884-1885)**

**REASONS WHY THE BERLIN CONFERENCE WAS CALLED**

1. The Berlin conference was a European meeting that took place in the German town of Berlin from the 15th November, 1884 to 30th January, 1885.
2. The meeting was called by the Chancellor of Germany, Otto Von Bismarck to carry out the paper work for the partition of East Africa. The partition of East Africa, therefore, took place in Europe first and on paper.
3. The conference was called to settle the issue of free navigation on rivers like the Nile, Congo, and Niger among others.
4. There had been many issues in Africa that could lead to war among European super powers, mostly over the control of colonies.
5. The conference, among other reasons, was called by Bismarck to harmonize the scramble and partition of East Africa.
6. The conference was called to inform members that in the process of the partition of East Africa, war should be avoided.
7. Otto Von Bismarck wanted to make other European powers know that Germany had interest to acquire Tanganyika as her colony.
8. In the conference, the bad relations between Britain and Germany, would also be discussed and resolved.
9. The issue of Niger River region in West Africa, would also be solved in this meeting.
10. Germany wanted to gain prestige as a broker of peace in the whole of Europe.
11. Bismarck also wanted international recognition as a peace loving man.
12. There was also need to emphasize effective control of colonies, once given to a European power.
13. It was also called to persuade European powers to stop slave trade in the colonies occupied.
14. After the 1871 Franco-Prussian war, France planned to revenge against Germany. This meeting would iron out this.
15. Yet, in this meeting, members would be told about the need to sign treaties, to act as signs that a colony was already under controlled.

**TERMS OF THE BERLIN CONFERENCE**

1. The Berlin conference was a European meeting that took place in the German town of Berlin from the 15th November, 1884 to 30th January, 1885.
2. The meeting was called by the Chancellor of Germany, Otto Von Bismarck to carry out the paper work for the partition of East Africa. The partition of East Africa, therefore, took place in Europe first on paper.

It resolved the following:

1. That a paper map of Africa be produced, then actual partition be done.
2. It was agreed that if any European developed interest to control a colony, other members should be informed.
3. That the European powers were to occupy the territories effectively.
4. It also resolved that once a colony was already taken over by any European power, no other power from Europe should go in for the same.
5. The European powers were to abolish slave trade in East Africa.
6. Rivers Congo, Niger, Nile among others were to be free areas for navigation for all the European powers in Africa.
7. East African countries were to be divided between Germany and Britain.
8. Congo was to go to Belgium under King Leopold II.
9. There was to be no war for colonies among the European powers.
10. Among the European powers, no country was to support the Africans against another, that is to say there was to be no support on rebellions by the Africans against European powers.

**ROLE OF THE BERLIN CONFERENCE IN THE PARTITION OF EAST AFRICA**

The conference played many roles in the colonization:

1. It was the Berlin Conference that forced the Europeans to introduce colonial rule in East Africa.
2. In its resolutions, it encouraged the colonial masters to abolish slave trade and introduce legitimate trade.
3. The European powers were forced to develop trade, agriculture and education in East Africa. This was an evidence of effective control.
4. It led to the formation of the chartered companies that administered the territory on behalf of the colonialists.
5. If formalized the scramble and partition of East Africa. Later East Africa was partitioned between Germany and Britain.
6. It confirmed the interest of the Germans in Tanganyika.
7. The Berlin conference forced Germany to introduce direct rule in Tanganyika.
8. Britain on the other hand was forced to introduce indirect rule in her colonies of Uganda and Kenya.
9. The conference left Congo in the hands of King Leopold II of Belgium.
10. The Berlin conference also led to the signing of the peace agreement between the British and Germans, hence passing peaceful resolutions to colonize East Africa.
11. East Africa was opened for economic exploitation by the Berlin conference.
12. The minds of the Europeans were diverted from West Africa to East Africa by the Berlin conference.
13. It made sure the Africans remained weak and disunited. It emphasized that the Europeans should not sell arms to the Africans.
14. By calling the Europeans for a meeting to handle the issue of the scramble and partition, it prevented war between the different European powers.

**CHAPTER 14**

**THE EUROPEAN ADMINISTRATIVE POLICIES IN EAST AFRICA  
THE GERMAN SYSTEM OF DIRECT RULE AND WHAT IT WAS**

1. The German system of indirect rule was a system in which the colonialists abolished the traditional African political institutions.
2. It was the kind of administration used by the Germans in Tanganyika.
3. It was the system of administration, where the Germans used foreigners in administration, that is to say, the Akidas and Jumbes, were used to administer Tanzanians
4. Direct rule was that system of administration that was introduced by Carl Peters.
5. It was the system of administration in which the Germans imposed their cultures and legal systems in the administration of the East African people.
6. It involved the Germans in the direct administration of the people of Tanganyika, hence the name direct rule.
7. It was the system of administration in which the traditional chiefs completely lost all their powers that were given to the Akidas and Jumbes from the coast.
8. It was used as a basis of administration in Tanganyika from 1891 up to 1914.
9. The system was harsh ruthless and generally very oppressive to the people Tanganyika.
10. It aimed at collection of taxes more than any other activity.
11. Public works like roads were properly supervised by the German colonial officials.
12. Under direct rule, special departments were also created, for example medical, agriculture, education and so on.
13. Top most leadership was for the whites only.

**REASONS WHY DIRECT RULE WAS APPLIED IN TANGANYIKA BY THE GERMANS**

1. The Germans used direct rule in order to maximumly exploit the resources of Tanganyika.
2. The Germans had enough personnel or manpower to administer their territory of Tanganyika.
3. They also feared the financial obligations involved in training local manpower.
4. It was one of the means through which the German prestige, would be fulfilled in Tanganyika.
5. In Tanganyika, most states lacked powerful chiefs who would govern on their behalf. Most communities in Tanganyika were decentralized and small. They could not provide powerful leaders.
6. It was applied so that the Germans would be able to effectively administer Tanganyika. The Berlin conference of 1884-1885, had also emphasized effective control in its terms and acts.
7. The need for the Germans to impose their customs and cultures to the people of Tanzania.
8. They did not want to use indirect rule because it was applied by the British elsewhere in East Africa. They wanted to appear different from the British in their administration.
9. Besides, they were being threatened by the British, who wanted to control the whole of East Africa. Direct rule would make Germany watch the movements of Britain in East Africa.
10. The Germans initially had suffered from African resistances; hence they needed to be more firm.
11. Direct rule would ensure that Africans grow cash crops to feed their home industries in Germany.
12. The Germans were proud so they did not want to share leadership with the Africans hence direct rule.
13. German had used force to take over many parts of Tanzania, and hence it was only direct rule that could offer the best political yields.
14. They also wanted their area of control in East Africa to be very strong in all aspects.
15. The Germans joined the Scramble for colonies in Africa late, and therefore, they got few colonies. They therefore decided to administer them directly.
16. The Germans lacked experience in tropical countries and they did not trust the local leaders in East Africa. They, therefore, decided to use direct rule.
17. They also wanted to dominate the hostile Muslim Arabs along the East African coast. They, therefore, choose to use direct rule.
18. Direct rule would be the best way of creating employment for their excess unemployed population in Germany.

**HOW THE GERMANS APPLIED DIRECT RULE IN TANGANYIKA**

1. The Germans made use of the Akidas and Jumbes. The Akidas were the Arabs and Swahili people who collaborated with the Germans, while the Jumbes were Headsmen and leaders of small clans or groups of Africans.
2. The governor, who was at the top of administration was based at Dar-es- Salaam.
3. He had an advisory council that had Europeans in its composition.
4. Tanzania was divided into 24 districts for easy administration.
5. Each district was supposed to have about 20,000 to 30,000 people for easy administration.
6. Of the 24 districts, each was under a District administrator.
7. The German administrators appointed and dismissed at will the African local leaders.
8. The Chaotic districts of Iringa and Mahenge were put under strict military administrators.
9. Each district had a police post to maintain law and order.
10. Districts were sub-divided into counties and sub-counties.
11. The German administrators also worked as administrators to handle criminal cases reported.
12. As the Germans worked at the District level and above, villages were ruled by Jumbes and Akidas, under strict supervision by the German officials.
13. The German settlers were also used in most areas to administer Tanganyika.
14. In Chagga land, the local chiefs were left to continue with leadership, because they were peaceful.
15. The Akidas and Jumbes together with the District administrators, collected taxes for the German government.
16. The German administrators were harsh and cruel, as they used direct rule. This was done to scare the Africans from rebelling the more

**PROBLEMS FACED BY THE GERMANS IN IMPLEMENTING DIRECT RULE**

1. Language problem posed a big problem, because the Germans did not know the languages of the Africans among whom they were working.
2. Harsh climatic conditions like in some seasons, there would be too much sunshine and too much coldness in yet other seasons.
3. Manpower was lacking in some areas making their work very difficult.
4. Besides Tanganyika was a big territory that could not easily be administered by the few Germans without the Africans.
5. There was also lack of funds to pay the Germans who helped in the implementation of the direct rule.
6. The Africans did not accept to work in the German projects like road construction and plantations. They, therefore, lacked labour and this was a big problem.
7. Thick forests acted as a big geographical barrier, because they affected the movement of the German officials.
8. The Germans were being threatened by the presence of the British, who wanted to take control of the whole of East Africa. There was, therefore, stiff competition for colonies in East Africa.
9. The Belgians in Congo also were a big threat to the German colony in East Africa. They wanted to take over the whole of Africa.
10. The German officials lacked supplies like food, medicine and clothes for their personal use.
11. The Akidas and Jumbes were not effective in their leadership. They were very cruel and it made the Germans to be hated by African communities.
12. The Germans fought many wars of resistance against the Africans. The Hehe and the southern tribes in Tanganyika fought many wars of resistance against the Germans.
13. The coastal Muslims heavily opposed the Germans, right from the beginning of their administration in Tanganyika.
14. Tropical disease like malaria and sleeping sickness, killed many of the German officials.
15. Most societies in Tanganyika were decentralized and they could not provide good centres for the German administration in the interior.
16. Poor infrastructure also made it a big problem especially to the German officials. The roads were not properly developed hence movement was a problem.
17. The resignation of Otto Von Bismarck as a German Chancellor in 1890 greatly affected the German colonial administration.
18. During the World War I, Germany was defeated, and this put her colony in East Africa under a big threat. She lost Tanganyika to Britain through the League of Nations.

**EFFECTS OF DIRECT RULE TO THE PEOPLE OF TANGANYIKA**

1. It led to wide spread rebellions, for example Maji-Maji, Hehe rebellion and Abushiri among others.
2. The local chiefs lost their powers to the Jumbes and Akidas.
3. The Akidas and Jumbes were therefore promoted.
4. New crops were introduced in Tanganyika, for example sisal, cotton and many others.
5. Infrastructures were developed so as to use them to exploit resources of Tanganyika.
6. The German culture, or generally Western cultures were spread throughout Tanganyika. African cultures were steadily eroded away.
7. The German direct rule led to widespread of Christianity in Tanganyika except in the coastal areas, where the Arabs had deeply established Islam.
8. They undermined the Muslim cultures, for example the German administrators would enter the mosques with dogs, moreover during the holy month of Ramadan.
9. The Tanganyika states and chiefdoms lost their independence to the Germans. Tribal institutions were destroyed.
10. There was loss of lives in wars intended to force the people of Tanganyika to abide by this system, hence depopulation.
11. Africans lived in fear and panic as the Germans subjected them to heavy punishments.
12. Forced labour was imposed on the people of Tanganyika, that is to say they were forced to work the in the German plantations and provide transport means in form of head portorage.
13. Serious discontent spread throughout different parts of Tanganyika.
14. Africans lost all their reliable and fertile lands to the Germans.
15. Reserves or settlements were established for the Africans whose land had been grabbed.
16. Poor Africans in Tanganyika were overtaxed hence making them poorer and poorer.
17. Famine broke out in several parts of Tanganyika, as people did not settle down to cultivate due to wars with the Germans. Others were forced to participate in cash crop cultivation against their will and could not cultivate food crops.
18. Public flogging became the order of the day.
19. Immorality increased in Tanganyika, as the German officials raped women and girls, especially the Wanyindo.
20. It, in the end, led to the rise and development of nationalism in Tanganyika, as Africans wanted to free themselves

**Revision questions**

1. What was direct rule?
2. How was direct rule applied in Tanganyika before 1914?
3. Why was direct rule applied by the Germans?
4. What were the problems faced by the German direct rulers?
5. What were the effects of direct rule to the people of Tanganyika?

**BRITISH INDIRECT SYSTEM OF RULE IN EAST AFRICA**

**WHAT WAS INDIRECT RULE IN TANGANYIKA?**

1. This was a system of colonial administration used by the British in Kenya and Uganda.
2. The British government replaced IBEACo in Uganda 1894 and they introduced indirect rule.
3. The indirect system of rule was also introduced in Kenya in 1895.
4. It was introduced by Fredrick Lugard.
5. It involved the use of local leaders. The traditional chiefs were used to rule their fellow Africans.
6. The system involved the usage of traditional institutions in administration.
7. It worked well in well organised Kingdoms like Buganda, Tooro, Ankole, and Wanga among others.
8. The system was based on divide and rule.
9. The African chiefs worked under the instructions of the British.
10. The system made the African leader to work as Shock absorbers.
11. It was a system of leadership that divided the Africans into collaborators and resistors.
12. African personalities like Apollo Kaggwa, Nuwa Mbaguta, Mumia Nabongo and Semei Kakungulu were used as collaborators.
13. It was a system of administration that tried to preserve African institution, for example. Courts of law.
14. The traditional rulers were supposed to collect taxes on behalf of the British
15. Local administration was left under traditional rulers.
16. Under indirect rule topmost political offices were dominated by the whites while the African took up lower jobs.
17. Supervision of local chiefs was done by the British.
18. At the apex or top of this system, was the secretary for colonies, who was a white man resident in London.
19. He was responsible for the British colonial affairs and was answerable to the British parliament.
20. Below the secretary for colonies were the Governor Generals who were also whites.
21. These were responsible for colonies and were answerable to the secretary for colonies.
22. The colonies were divided into provinces.
23. The provinces were further sub- divided into districts under the district commissioners and also headed by whites.
24. The districts were further divided into smaller administrative unites called counties, under a county chief, who was an African.
25. The county chief was supposed to maintain law and order.
26. Counties still were divided into sub-counties, under sub-county chiefs, who were Africans.
27. Sub counties were then sub-divided into parishes, under parish chiefs who were also Africans.
28. The parishes were sub-divided into sub-parishes under sub-parish chiefs and these too were Africans.
29. The sub-parishes were divided into villages, under the village chiefs or headmen, who were Africans.
30. Under British administration, the Africans featured in the local government, while the whites controlled the central government acting as supervisors.
31. In some other areas, some people who had no hereditary claims to power agents, were used as the case was in Bunyoro.
32. In the west of Uganda, the Bairu were used to rule the Bahima
33. Among other duties, the African chiefs collected taxes that were used to develop roads, schools, health centres and to implement other colonial policies.
34. The chiefs were given salaries to make them loyal to the British colonial government and the central authority in London.
35. In all serious cases, African chiefs had no serious powers.
36. To ease administration, administrative centres, roads and railways were put in place.

**DIAGRAMMATIC STRUCTURE OF THE BRITISH INDIRECT RULE**

Colonial secretary (white) based in London

Governor General (white) based in the colony

Provincial governors (whites) based at the provinces

District commissioners (whites) based at the Districts

County Chiefs based (Africans) based at the county Headquarters

Sub County Chiefs (Africans) based at the Sub county Headquarters

Parish Chiefs (Africans) based at the Parish Headquarters

Sub-Parish Chiefs (Africans) based at the Sub Parish Headquarters

Village Headman (Africans) based at the villages

**WHY THE BRITISH APPLIED INDIRECT RULE IN EAST AFRICA**

1. It was cheaper economically. The whites if used intensively, would required a lot of money yet the Africans would be given little money and even accept gifts.
2. The British had few personnel in East Africa. The Chiefs were abundant in and they were ready to work for the British.
3. The British first used it in their outside colonies of India, Nigeria and Ghana and it was successful.
4. It had worked well in Buganda; hence the British felt the need to use it throughout.
5. It was to act as a form of “reward” to the communities that had co-operated, for example Buganda.
6. The British believed that traditional leaders would secure obedience and respect much more easily from the subjects.
7. Britain never wanted to make colonialism too obvious hence it was “Sugar coated” through indirect rule
8. It was part and parcel of the divide and rule policy, where the British used people like the Baganda, to governed on their behalf. They were hated throughout their countries.
9. It could easily solve communication problems as Africans knew the languages of fellow Africans.
10. Presence of good local administration in certain parts of E.ast Africa.
11. It was intended to make the British look more unique in their administration, that is to say, not to use a method similar to what their rivals; the Germans had used.
12. Local rulers understood their local people better in terms of administrative tactics.
13. The Africans would not rebel because they would be seeing their people working.
14. It was intended to make the Africans act as “Shock absorbers” in case of any problem in administration. The British leaders would appear as if they were not part of African suffering under colonial rule.
15. There was lack of good transport net work and means of transport for the Whites to use to move around in villages. The Africans were then left in their leadership position.
16. The problem of tropical diseases like small pox and malaria posed a big threat to the White personnel.
17. The British had only the time to exploit the African resources. They never had time to handle African politics.
18. They also wanted the Africans to master leadership qualities, hence need to involve them.
19. The Africans were willing to work for the whites, for example, people like Semei Kakungulu, Apollo Kaggwa, and Nabongo Mumia among others.
20. They discovered that the Africans could work well in lower positions, not higher positions where other white scramblers would overpower them.

**METHODS OF RULE USED BY THE BRITISH TO ADMINISTER THEIR TERRITORIES IN EAST AFRICA BY 1920**

1. The method of administration was indirect rule.
2. It was mainly applied in areas with centralised political institutions.
3. At the apex or top of this system, was the secretary for colonies, who was a Whiteman resident in London.
4. He was responsible for the British colonial affairs and was answerable to the British parliament.
5. Below the secretary for colonies were the Governor Generals, who were also whites.
6. These were responsible for colonies and were answerable to the secretary for colonies.
7. The colonies were divided into provinces.
8. The provinces were further sub- divided into districts under the district commissioners and also headed by whites.
9. The districts were further divided into smaller administrative unites called counties, under a county chief, who was an African.
10. The county chief was supposed to maintain law and order.
11. Counties still were divided into sub-counties, under sub-county chiefs, who were Africans.
12. Sub counties were then sub-divided into parishes under parish chiefs who were also Africans.
13. The parishes were sub-divided into sub-parishes, under sub-parish chiefs and these too were Africans.
14. The sub-parishes were divided into villages, under the village chiefs or headmen, who were Africans.
15. Under British administration, the Africans featured in the local government while the whites controlled the central government acting as supervisors.
16. In some other areas, some people who had no hereditary claims to power agents were used, as the case was in Bunyoro.
17. In the west of Uganda, the Bairu were used to rule the Bahima
18. Among other duties, the African chiefs collected taxes that were used to develop roads, schools, health centres and to implement other colonial policies.
19. The chiefs were given salaries to make them loyal to the British colonial government and the central authority in London.
20. In all serious cases, African chiefs had no serious powers.
21. To ease administration, administrative centres, roads and railways were put in place.

**HOW INDIRECT RULE WAS APPLIED IN UGANDA AND KENYA**

1. The British used the local chiefs in the counties, sub counties, parishes, sub parishes and villages.
2. The British divided their colony into provinces, districts, counties and many smaller units.
3. Many societies signed treaties that made it acceptable for them to be under the British rule.
4. It was also applied by using collaborators who were mainly Baganda like Semei Kakungulu, who spread the system to other areas.
5. The chiefs who assisted the British were given programmes like supervising the road construction, collecting taxes and so on.
6. In areas where people resisted like Bunyoro, Karamoja, Northern Uganda and the Nandi land, force was used.
7. Communication lines were constructed to reach rebellious areas.
8. The Chartered companies were also used.
9. In Kenya most white settlers were used to administer on behalf of the British.
10. The missionaries too, were used to implement indirect rule.
11. The colonial army and police were recruited from among the Africans to handle rebellious communities.
12. The local councils were put in place in other areas and the Buganda system of rule was introduced to ease leadership.
13. Uncooperative chiefs like Rwot Awich of Payiira in Acholi land, was removed from power.
14. Administrative headquarters were also established to handle administration, for example Mombasa, Nairobi and Entebbe.
15. Chiefs were paid salaries in order to motivate them to work.
16. Law courts were also introduced to handle local justice.

**PROBLEMS FACED BY INDIRECT RULERS IN EAST AFRICA**

1. The implementers faced the problem of tropical diseases like sleeping sickness, malaria and others.
2. There was also the problem of harsh climatic condition.
3. Language was a problem to the agents and the colonial administrators at the higher level.
4. The chiefs who implemented the indirect rule system were killed by the local people.
5. In some areas the British were exploitative. It made many of them to be killed, for example in Ankole Provincial commissioner John Galt was murdered.
6. The local chiefs were always despised and disrespected by both their superiors and the local people hence making them discouraged.
7. The Buganda system of leadership used, was unfavorable in non-centralized areas.
8. Communication within areas where the white personnel worked was unfavorable.
9. Transport network, too, was not developed.
10. Resistance against the implementers of indirect rule was yet another problem, for example the Nandi, Bunyoro, Karamoja and Northern Uganda.
11. The Baganda agents, who implemented indirect rule, were not welcomed in other parts in Uganda.
12. Chiefs, who worked for the British, were not paid in time, hence making their work very difficult.
13. There was even lack of manpower to administer the East African territories.
14. The Baganda peasants who never had land rebelled against the implementers of indirect rule.

**EFFECTS OF INDIRECT RULE IN EAST AFRICA**

1. The effects were both positive and negative.
2. They were also were political, economic and social.
3. It led to the introduction of forced labour. The Africans were made to work in plantations against their will.
4. New boundaries of East African countries, where indirect rule was implemented, were drawn and as a result tribes were detribalized.
5. There was emergence of foreign language, for example English.
6. It also led to the occurrence of many resistances, for example among the Nandi and Banyoro among others, where several people were killed.
7. As people resisted, many were killed, hence depopulation.
8. Property, too, was destroyed.
9. It also led to the signing of very many treaties, whose implications and meanings were   
   unclear to the Africans, like Buganda agreement of 1900.
10. Uganda, where indirect rule worked very well, was divided up, for example the western, Southern, central Uganda and the Northern Uganda.
11. It led to other tribes hating Buganda that implemented indirect rule in most parts of Uganda.
12. The Baganda became “Yes people” because they collaborated with the British, who later used them to implement indirect rule.
13. Buganda that implemented indirect rule benefited from it greatly. Many developments were carried out in Buganda, for example roads and schools were constructed.
14. There was also introduction of new crops in Uganda and Kenya, for people to take part in theri growing, for example coffee, tea and cotton among others.
15. There was rapid spread of Christianity, because people who implemented indirect rule also spread Christianity, especially the Christian missionaries.
16. Uganda never developed as a white colony, because of indirect rule system. There was no need of bringing more whites for leadership.
17. Uganda and Kenyan resources like minerals were fully exploited for the benefit of Europeans.
18. It resulted into forced labour, for example in Tanzania.
19. There was improvement in agriculture as new farming methods like crop rotation were introduced.
20. There was serious loss of independence by the EastAfrican people.
21. The East African people lost their fertile land
22. It resulted into forced labour, for example in Tanzania.
23. There was increased in the number of Europeans into East Africa, especially in Kenya.
24. African cultures were undermined.

**Revision questions**

1. What was indirect rule?
2. How was indirect rule applied in Uganda?
3. Why was indirect rule applied by the British?
4. What were the problems faced by the British indirect rulers?
5. What were the effects of indirect rule to the people of Uganda and Kenya?

**CHAPTER 15**

**EAST AFRICAN RESPONSE TO THE ESTABLISHMENT OF COLONIAL RULE**

**HOW THE AFRICANS REACTED TO THE SCRAMBLE AND PARTITION OF EAST AFRICA**

1. Some societies collaborated, for example Buganda.
2. Other societies worked as recruits into colonial armies.
3. Some Africans fought against Europeans.
4. Some Africans bitterly resented the Europeans, for example Nandi.
5. Some Africans put up armed resistances, for example coastal towns.
6. Others welcomed them and latter turned against them, for example Baganda.
7. Some people refused European religions.
8. Some East African people got converted to Christianity.
9. Some people refused to provide labour to grow cash crops introduced by Europeans.
10. However, the East Africans reacted in three different ways to the establishment of colonial rule, they either collaborated or resisted. Few remained passive or indifferent.

**COLLABORATION TOWARDS COLONIAL RULE ESTABLISHMENT**

**REASONS WHY SOME SOCIETIES COLLABORATED WITH THE EUROPEANS**

1. Collaboration was the African submission, allying, cooperation, support and assistance towards colonial rule in East Africa.
2. Some personalities and societies instead of defending African independence, sold it for their own gains and selfish reasons.
3. Societies and personalities that collaborated with the colonialists were: the Masai under Laiboni Lenana, Kikuyu under Kinyanjui, Wanga under Nabongo Mumia, Ankole under Nuwa Mbaguta, and Tooro under Omukama Kasagama among others.
4. There were also personalities like Semei Kakungulu and Apollo Kaggwa of Buganda.

Some societies collaborated with the Europeans because of the following reasons:

1. Some Societies thought by collaborating, they would preserve their independence.
2. Others had internal conflicts and they wanted to use the Europeans to help them solve them, for example Lenaana had a fear of his Brother Sendeyo who wanted to take over his power.
3. Yet others were militarily weak and they could not withstand the military might of the Europeans hence they ended up collaborating.
4. The indirect rule system used by the British made some societies to be collaborators because they were left in their position of leadership to implement European policies, hence collaboration.
5. Some societies wanted military weapons like guns from the colonizers. They collaborated to get this assistance.
6. There were also some European opportunities like education that some societies in East Africa found worth getting from the Europeans. They therefore collaborated because of this.
7. Others simply collaborated because their enemies resisted. This was true with the Baganda because of the Banyoro who had resisted colonial rule.
8. Decentralized states collaborated because their societies were small and could not mobilize themselves to rebel. They ended up collaborating.
9. Missionary activities also influenced some societies to collaborate. This was majorly through their preaching like “blessed are those who are humble for the Kingdom of God is theirs. This made the Africans submissive.
10. The Africans did not have experience in warfare with the Europeans. The Europeans were use to heavier wars than the Africans.
11. The Africans were ignorant about European intentions, that is to say they had not known that the Europeans had come to exploit Africans.
12. Some societies among the Africans collaborated because they wanted to get gifts like old clothes, shoes, jobs or even sweet from the whites.
13. Yet others were influenced by their leaders to collaborate, for example the Masai people collaborated because their leader collaborated. This was the same with the Baganda.
14. The Africans did not even have strong economy that could make them sustain war with the Europeans.
15. Besides many societies feared that their property would be destroyed by the colonialists. They therefore ended up collaborating.
16. Others were hit by famine and diseases; hence they ended up collaborating with the colonialists so as to get assistance.
17. Some societies began with the Europeans in a friendly way and resisting them later would be difficult.
18. Some societies tried to resist but they were defeated. They ended up collaborating; good examples were the Hehe and the Coastal Arabs.
19. Others were just schemers and opportunists by nature, for example Semei Kakungulu and Apollo Kaggwa of the Buganda kingdom.

**SEMEI KAKUNGULU AS A COLLABORATOR**

1. Semei Kakangulu was a Muganda born in Kooki in 1870.
2. He grew up in the palace of Kabaka of Buganda where he was working.
3. He had power struggle with Sir Apollo Kaggwa at the Kabaka’s palace.
4. Semei Kakungulu was skillful at Elephant hunting.
5. He acquired special military skills which he later used in religious wars in Buganda on the side.
6. Semei Kakungulu was a schemer who expected some material wealth from the British.
7. From 1892, Semei Kakungulu collaborated with the British openly to his advantage.
8. He set up his capital at Bugerere with the assistance of the British soldiers.
9. Kakungulu expanded his Kingdom to Lango, Teso, Busoga, and Bukedi with the help of the British.
10. He conquered all the parts of Eastern Uganda for the British. He was referred to as the Kabaka of Eastern Uganda because when he conquered those areas he introduced the Ganda system of leadership.
11. He also assisted the British to defeat the Moslems.
12. He built roads and planted trees in Eastern Uganda especially in Mbale.
13. Kakungulu introduced cotton growing in Eastern Uganda to meet the cost of British administration.
14. He also assisted the British to extend their rule to Western Kenya.
15. Kakungulu’s influence started declining. In 1923, his powers in Eastern Uganda disappeared.
16. The British dismissed Kakungulu from his duty as the leader of Eastern Uganda.
17. On 19th November, Kakungulu died a frustrated man at Gangama near Mbale town.

**SIR APOLLO KAGGWA AS A COLLABORATOR**

1. Apollo Kaggwa was a Muganda born in 1869.
2. He worked in the palace of Kabaka Mutesa I and Mwanga from where he learnt the skill of leadership.
3. When Christianity was brought to Uganda, Apollo Kaggwa converted to protestant religion.
4. Kaggwa fought in the religious wars against the Moslems.
5. Apollo Kaggwa fought in the religious wars between the Protestants and Catholics on the side of the Protestants.
6. He led a campaign under Colonel Colville, a British against Kabaka Mwanga of Buganda and Omukama Kabalega of Bunyoro in 1894. The two were resisting the establishment of the British rule in their kingdoms.
7. In 1897, he was appointed a senior regent in the government of the young Kabaka, Daudi Chwa.
8. Later Apollo Kaggwa was made a Katikiiro (prime Minister) of Buganda Kingdom.
9. In 1898, he assisted the British rulers to overcome the Sudanese mutineers (rioters).
10. In 1899, he participated in the capturing of Kabaka Mwanga and Omukama Kabalega who had taken refuge in Lango.
11. Kaggwa played a great role in the Signing of the 1900 Buganda agreement that placed Buganda Kingdom directly under the British rule.
12. He worked very closely with the British colonial government under Governor Sir Hesketh Bell.
13. Kaggwa encouraged education where schools were established to encourage education.
14. He also supported the development of Agriculture by adopting new methods of agriculture and growing of new crops.
15. In the health department, he assisted in the rescuing of people from the shores of Lake Victoria where there was an outbreak of sleeping sickness.
16. Apollo Kaggwa defended the Buganda traditional institution.
17. He also protected the rights of the Lukiiko (Buganda parliament).
18. He later got misunderstanding with the British colonial rulers.
19. Apollo Kaggwa also faced stiff resistance from the new chiefs. Kabaka Daudi Chwa had also become of age.
20. In 1926, Apollo Kaggwa, angry and frustrated resigned after all a number of misunderstandings.
21. In 1927, he died when he had outlived his usefulness to both the British and his own people of Buganda.

**OMUKAMA KASAGAMA OF TOORO AS A COLLABORATOR**

1. Kasagama was the King of Tooro who was restored to the throne by the British.
2. He was under constant threats from Kabalega, the King of Bunyoro. For example he was driven out of power in 1893.
3. When Kabalega was defeated by the British in 1894, Tooro got part of Bunyoro land with the help of the British.
4. Kasagama became a strong ally of the British. But he did not get recognition as Omukama from all the Batooro.
5. In 1904, Kasagama had his power increased when the British government asked Maddox, a CMS missionary to intervene.
6. As a result, Kasagama had his power increased and he was recognized as the Omukama of Tooro. He could nominate his successor.
7. Under Kasagama, Tooro was treated on the same footing with other Kingdoms in Uganda.
8. The relationship between the Batooro and the colonial government was not very smooth.
9. They accused the colonial government of neglecting Tooro region as far as development was concerned.
10. They also accused the British government of giving some of their territories to Congo in the demarcation new boundaries.
11. Kasagama signed the 1900 Tooro agreement with the British.
12. Much as Kasagama collaborated with the British, there was a lot of mistrust and hostility between the colonial government and his people.
13. Many of Kasagama’s Chiefs had not received the Mailoland promised to them during the signing of the 1900 Tooro agreement. They therefore remained defiant.
14. Kasagama died on 29th December 1929.

**NUWA MBAGUTA OF ANKOLE AS A COLLABORATOR**

1. Nuwa Mbaguta was a Munyankole born in 1867.
2. When still young, Mbaguta lost all his parents and grew among his relatives.
3. He did not have good time among his relatives and therefore, he ran away to live at the palace of Omugabe Ntare IV.
4. Mbaguta was taken to work in as a page at the King’s court at Mularagaira although he did not enjoy his stay while there.
5. From Mularagaira, Mbaguta ran back to Omugabe Ntare’s palace.
6. Mbaguta grew up a very courageous man.
7. He was a fearless wrestler which earned him the Nickname “Kitinwa” meaning the feared one.
8. Mbaguta’s courage and wisdom drew the attention of the Omugabe.
9. He later became one of the favorite pages and also became part of the trusted army unit.
10. Mbaguta became one of the devoted campaigners for the British collaborators.
11. In 1894, he signed a treaty with the British on behalf of Ntare IV.
12. He spearheaded road construction that Sir Harry Johnstone used to move within the areas of Ankole and Tooro.
13. In 1900, Nuwa Mbaguta was made the “Enganzi” (Prime minister) of Ankole by the British.
14. It was Nuwa Mbaguta who signed the 1901 Ankole agreement with the British. This put Ankole under the British rule.
15. Under the 1901 Ankole agreement the British promised to support Ankole against the invasion from Bunyoro.
16. Ankole through the 1901 agreement was allowed to maintain self government and she was rewarded with new areas like Mpororo, Igara, Buziba and Buhweju.
17. Mbaguta Nuwa as a collaborator encouraged education by setting up a number of schools in the Kingdom.
18. He encouraged the spread of Christianity by supporting the construction of churches.
19. Mbaguta also encouraged the growing of cash crops which assisted in boosting colonial economy.
20. He was rewarded with a Member of British Empire honour (MBE) due to his great contribution to the British rule.
21. Nuwa Mbaguta later retired in 1938 and in 1944, he passed on.

**Revision questions**

1. How did the East African people respond to the coming of the Europeans?
2. Why did some societies in East Africa collaborate with the colonial rule?
3. Describe the life and career of the following as Collaborators towards colonial rule:
4. Semei Kakungulu
5. Sir Apollo Kaggwa
6. Omukama Kasgama.
7. Nuwa Mbaguta.

**RESISTANCES OR REBELLIONS TO COLONIAL RULE**

**WHY SOME EAST AFRICAN PEOPLE RESISTED THE EUROPEAN COLONIALISTS**

1. Resistances were African armed struggle against foreign rule. They were led by either the chiefs or tribal leaders.
2. They were carried out right after the Europeans had established themselves in East Africa.
3. The major ones were: Maji Maji rebellion by the tribes in Southern Tanganyika under Kinjikitile Ngwalwe, the Hehe under chief Mkwawa, the Nandi under Chief Orkoyoit and the Coastal Arabs under the Abushiri among others.
4. One of the reasons for African resistances was the need to preserve the independence of the societies of East Africa.
5. The African chiefs and Kings wanted to preserve their traditional power and authority. They wanted to preserve their status and prestige.
6. The need to preserve their cultures was yet another reason for their resistances against European colonial rule.
7. The need to maintain their land was yet another reason for their resistance. They fared loss of their land to the Europeans.
8. The Need to retain economic power. The Africans had controlled trade but the Europeans wanted to take over, hence African resisted.
9. There was the influence of traditional religion or beliefs, for example Maji Maji rebellion was fought along the line of strong African belief in their traditional gods and ancestors. They argued that their gods would come to their assistance.
10. The Europeans had also harsh rule. They ruled by force.
11. The approach used in some cases was not fair, for example the Germans in Tanganyika used direct rule, where they removed the African traditional leaders from power and replaced them with either the whites or people whom they trusted.
12. They feared forced labour and harsh labour policies that the Europeans were applying.
13. The military strength of some East African communities, for example the Nandi were naturally warriors.
14. Religious differences, for example the coastal Swahili and Arabs were Muslims who staged resistance against the Europeans who were Christians.
15. Disrespect of African culture by the Europeans forced the Africans to rise against them.
16. Overtaxation of the Africans by the Europeans was yet another reason why the Africans resisted. They regarded it as economic exploitation.
17. Besides, slave trade which was a basis of livelihood of the Africans was being stopped by the Europeans. This forced the Africans to resist them.
18. The education which the Europeans introduced later made the Africans realized the motives and intensions of the whites, hence need to resist them.
19. Others resisted because their enemies accepted or collaborated with the colonialists.

**REASON WHY THE AFRICAN RESISTANCES FAILED**

**OR**

**WHY THE AFRICANS WERE DEFEATED IN THEIR RESISTANCES AGAINST THE EUROPEANS.**

The African resistances failed because of a number of reasons:

* 1. The Europeans were too determined to fight and control East Africa.
  2. The Europeans also had far superior weapons compared to the East Africans, for example maxium guns that could hit a target at long range.
  3. The Europeans received home support that is to say from their governments.
  4. The Europeans were also too experienced in warfare, for example the Napoleonic wars of the 19th century had given them experience.
  5. The Europeans had taken over the economic life of East African people and they had generated a lot of wealth to meet the cost of war with the Africans.
  6. They also had high level of technology which was not the case with poor Africans.
  7. The Africans had inferiority complex, whereby they believed that the Whiteman could not be defeated.
  8. The Africans had also been hit hard by diseases that affected their strength.
  9. Most African communities were not united at all, for example Bunyoro was always fighting against Buganda.
  10. The Africans were disorganized in their fighting with the Europeans, for example the Nandi resistors and Maji Maji rebels among others were defeated on the ground of poor military organization.
  11. Some African communities were caught unaware. The Europeans used Surprise attacks to defeat them.
  12. There was also lack of support from neighbours, for example the Nandi were never supported by the Luyia, Masai and Luo because they were so rebellious to them.
  13. The long periods of drought and famine that hit some African communities weakened their ability to resist.
  14. The Europeans were very brutal during their attacks, that is to say they used scotch earth policy in which they destroyed each and every thing. This was very common with the Germans.
  15. Lack of constant supply of arms on the African side also weakened them the more.
  16. The Africans believed so much in superstitions, for example among the Nandi instead of fighting, they expected their gods to do for them miracles.
  17. The effects of slave trade in East Africa had disorganized the resistances among the Africans. Young energetic men who could have resisted the Europeans were taken away into slavery.
  18. The Europeans used a system of deportation whereby strong African leaders were exiled, for example Kabalega of Bunyoro and Mwanga of Buganda were exiled in the Seychelles Island. Their people became leaderless.
  19. The education which the Christian missionaries introduced provided “Yes Men” not resistors. It produced those who were very loyal to the Europeans.
  20. The missionary preaching also softened the minds and hearts of the Africans through their preaching that,” blessed are those who are humble for the Kingdom of God is theirs”. The Africans then became submissive.
  21. Most African ring leaders were arrested and killed by the colonialists, for example Kinjikitile together with some other African leaders were killed when they were arrested.

**Note that** the above points can also assist in answering why any East African community was defeated by Europeans.

**Revision questions**

1. Why did the East African people resist colonial rule?
2. Why were they finally defeated by the colonialists?

**CHAPTER 16**

**CASE STUDIES OF RESISTANCES BY COMMUNITIES IN EAST AFRICA**

**THE ABUSHIRI REBELLION AT THE COAST OF TANGANYIKA (1888-1890)**

**CAUSES OF ABUSHIRI RESISTANCE**

1. Abushiri resistance is also referred to as the Coastal rebellion and Arab revolt.
2. It was the first resistance that was staged against the German rule in Tanganyika.
3. It was led jointly by Abushiri Bin Salim and Bwana Heri.
4. The Abushiri rebellion occurred from 1888-1890.
5. The Arabs, Swahili people and Africans were the ones who were very much involved.

The causes were:

1. It was fought as a way of preserving African political independence that the Germans had wanted to take.
2. Some African traditional leaders had lost their powers to the Germans and there was need to redeem it, hence war.
3. The Germans abused and despised Arab cultures as inferior and backward.
4. The German traders had also dominated the Coastal trade and this forced the Arabs to fight them.
5. Besides they had put heavy tariffs on traders and the local people, for example taxes like hut tax, poll tax and inheritance tax among others.
6. The taxes introduced were even brutally and cruelly collected.
7. The Sultan of Zanzibar had sold African coastland to the Germans. This later provoked or forced war against the Germans.
8. The German rulers at the coast were too harsh and rude to their subjects, for example they would wallop, and whip, cane and even frog march the local people. This attracted war.
9. The Germans was active in the abolition of slave trade which the coastal Arabs and the Africans had benefited from highly. They therefore rejected this move.
10. The Arabs generally hated the whitemen and it not surprising that when the Germans established themselves at the East African coast they were resisted.
11. The presence of strong leaders like Abushiri Bin Salim and Bwana Heri encouraged the Arabs to resist.
12. The coastal people also resisted forced labour imposed on them by the Germans.
13. The German East African Company had started forcefully removing houses from the Arabs. The coastal people were therefore resisting loss of their property.
14. The Germans were not respecting the Moslem time of praying, fasting, even the Mosques. They would stubbornly enter the mosques with dogs.
15. The Germans were so immoral. They committed adultery with African wives after getting drunk. This annoyed the Africans.
16. In 1888, the Germans passed a new land regulation that required the Africans to have proof of land ownership. To the Africans and the Arabs, this was looking for a way of grabbing African land. They therefore fought to oppose this law.

**COURSE AND ORGANIZATION OF THE ABUSHIRI UPRISING**

1. Abushiri uprising was also referred to as the Coastal rebellion and Arab revolt.
2. It was the first resistance that was staged against the German rule in Tanganyika.
3. It was led jointly by Abushiri Bin Salim and Bwana Heri.
4. Abushiri rebellion occurred from 1888-1890.
5. The Arabs, Swahili people and Africans were involved.
6. The resistance started in august 1888 when the Germans arrived and established themselves in the area. They had wanted to raise their flag.
7. The coastal people rejected this move and they rioted right away.
8. The rebellion took route and extended to other areas like Kilwa, Bagamoyo, and Tanga settled on by the Arabs.
9. Some of the Bantu tribes like the Bonda and Uzigua joined in for self defense.
10. Abushiri Bin Salim got much support from his fellow Muslims.
11. The first attacks on the Germans caught them unaware and they suffered heavy losses.
12. The weapons of the rebels consisted of old fashioned guns, bows and arrows, spears and big sticks (clubs).
13. The rebels beat the GEACo officials and drove them out of the coastal towns.
14. The GEACo officials were besieged or confined in Bagamoyo and Dar es Salaam.
15. The alarming situation reached Germany and Von Wissman was sent to overcome the resistance.
16. When he arrived he mobilized mercenaries that included the Zulu, Somalis, Nubians, and Turks among others.
17. He started by capturing Pangani, the strong hold of the rebels and proceeded to Dar es Salaam including the Northern towns.
18. Wissman’s success made many Arabs to surrender and requested for peace.
19. Meanwhile Abushiri, the ring leader retreated into the interior and hired 500 Maviti mercenaries but these were only interested in looting wealth and did not do much.
20. On 15th December, Abushiri Bin Salim was betrayed by Jumbe Magaye of Usagara who reported him to the Germans. He was captured and hanged at Bagamoyo.
21. His comrade Bwana Heri surrendered to the Germans in april1890.
22. By January 1891 the resistance was crushed and the German government replaced the GEACo as the new rulers of their East African territory.

**REASONS WHY THE REBELLION FAILED**

1. The Germans were determined to bring Tanganyika mainland and East Africa under their control.
2. They had superior weapons as compared to those of the Africans.
3. In addition, the German army was well trained compared to the African army.
4. Many coastal towns fought in isolation. Generally, there was some form of disunity on the Arab side.
5. Abushiri Bin Salim had never been a military man. He lacked military training and therefore he could not successfully command a force against the Germans.
6. Compared to the army of the Germans, the ones of Abushiri was small.
7. The rebels were also betrayed by the Maviti mercenaries who were only interested in looting and did not know why they were fighting.
8. Abushiri was also betrayed by the Uzigua under Mkubwa. He assisted the Germans against Abushiri.
9. When Abushiri retreated inland, he was cut off from getting supplies of guns and other items. He never even had enough support inland.
10. The Germans were ruthless in their attacks. The mercenaries hired by the Germans were instructed to use full scale war.
11. Some sections of Abushiri rebels easily gave in to the Germans and this weakened the rebellion.
12. The rebels were poorly organised with poor fighting tactics like open warfare.
13. The rebellion lacked a national out look. It was taken to be an Arab rebellion.
14. The Germans used scotch earth policy which rendered the rebel foodless.
15. The coastal Arabs did not have a strong economy to sustain protracted war or prolonged warfare.
16. The Coastal topography did not favour the Coastal people. There were no defensive barriers.
17. The rebels lacked leadership after Abushiri was killed. They therefore got demoralized.
18. The leaders of the rebellion harassed those who did not join them making them be hated, hence not much support was given to them.

**EFFECTS OF THE REBELLION**

1. There was massive loss of lives on both sides.
2. The Germans forcefully grabbed land of the coastal people.
3. The rebels were completely defeated by the Germans.
4. The Germans took over the leadership of trade at the East African coast.
5. A lot of property was destroyed, for example buildings.
6. Due to the scotch earth policy the Germans used, famine broke out because crops and animals were destroyed.
7. The Abushiri defeat exposed the East African coast to colonialism.
8. The people of Tanganyika learnt a lesson that the Germans were superior and that force would never make them gained their independence.
9. The sultan of Zanzibar lost independence to the Germans. He later recognized the German governorship upon his territory.
10. The rebellion exposed the weakness of the GEACo leadership and failure to establish law and order.
11. The GEACo was withdrawn from leadership of the German colony in East Africa.
12. The German missionaries tried to spread Christianity at the East African coast although they failed.
13. The Arabs lost controlled of their customs duty to the German traders.
14. The rebellion was very costly to Germans to suppress. They spent a lot of money to overcome it.
15. The Germans and the British cooperated in the colonization of East Africa.
16. The Abushiri rebellions inspired African nationalism in Tanganyika against colonial rule. After this, many other rebellions occurred in East Africa.
17. There was a change in German government policy. The change was reflected in the appointment of Wissman as the Imperial German Commissioner.
18. The coastal Arabs lost their leader, Abushiri who was killed by being hanged.

**Revision questions**

1. What were the causes of the Abushiri uprising?
2. Describe the course of the Abushiri rebellion?
3. Why was the Abushiri rebellion defeated?
4. What were the effects this rebellion?

**THE HEHE REBELLION IN TANGANYIKA (1890-1898).**

**CAUSES OF THE HEHE RESISTANCE**

1. The Hehe occupied the Southern part of Tanganyika.
2. They were led by chief Mkwawa under whom they fought many of their neighbours including the Ngoni invaders.
3. They resisted from the onset the establishment of German colonial rule in their area.
4. The rebellion took place from 1890 to1898.

The causes were many and they included the following:

1. When the Germans took over the leadership of Tanganyika, they denied the Hehe under Mkwawa a chance to raid their neighbours as before.
2. Mkwawa also controlled the long distance trade route from Tabora to Bagamoyo where, the traders who were using it were being taxed. The Germans wanted to take control of that trade route, hence a rebellion.
3. Mkwawa had also refused the Germans to introduce their new tax called ‘the Hongo’.
4. Mkwawa of the Hehe also resisted the German forceful taking away of African land.
5. The Germans despised African culture by referred to it as satanic, barbaric and backward. The Hehe therefore fought because of cultural independence.
6. Mkwawa had his own problem with the Germans; that is to say the Germans had wanted to overthrow him; they were not at all comfortable with Mkwawa’s prosperity from trade. The need to preserve his traditional authority and the independence of his people therefore led to this rebellion.
7. Mkwawa, the Hehe chief was ready for the Germans, but still hoping that war could be avoided, he sent unarmed men with presents to meet the visitors and assure them of his friendly intentions. The Germans instead frustrated Mkwawa by opening fire against them and several of Mkwawa’s men were killed. This provoked him to revenge.
8. The Germans also subjected the Hehe people to forced labour on public works and the German projects.
9. Mkwawa was also very defiant to the German orders, for example he was summoned by the Germans for a meeting but he instead sent his messengers.
10. The German missionaries also threatened to abolish slave trade, yet the Hehe under Mkwawa depended on it. The Hehe rejected this.
11. The missionaries also encouraged the spread of Christianity. They condemned African religion and practices. This forced the Hehe under Mkwawa to fight them.
12. The Hehe hated the appearance of the white man. They called them ghosts and devils who must be destroyed.
13. The war was due to the act of the Hehe, when they forcefully released the Africans who had been imprisoned by the Germans at Usangara. The Germans therefore declared war on the Hehe.
14. The Hehe were also rebelling against the German harsh rule.

**COURSE OF THE HEHE REBELLION**

1. The war was led by Chief Mkwawa who was the leader of Hehe Society.
2. He came to power in 1878 after succeeding his father Mungyigumba.
3. Mkwawa led one of the greatest resistances against German authority during the 19th century.
4. Mkwawa had his own problem with the Germans; that is to say the Germans had wanted to depose him; they were not at all comfortable with Mkwawa’s prosperity from trade.
5. It was therefore the above factors and others that forced Mkwawa to rebel against the Germans.
6. In June 1891, a German force of more than one hundred troops advanced from Kilwa to attack Mkwawa.
7. M kwawa, the Hehe chief was ready for them, but still hoping that war could be avoided, he sent unarmed men with presents to meet the visitors and assure them of his friendly intentions.
8. The Germans instead completely frustrated Mkwawa only by opening fire against them and several of Mkwawa’s men were killed.
9. Mkwawa’s hope for peace was surely eliminated.
10. Mkwawa was too quick to ask his soldiers to attack with a lot of rapidity or speed; the German invaders including their leader “Zewlesky” were completely damaged.
11. The German garrison at Kilosa was attacked and all its occupants were killed.
12. A fresh German expedition led by Von Prince attacked Mkwawa’s fort at Kalenga and captured it in 1804 after fierce resistance.
13. At this very stage, Mkwawa escaped and resorted to prolonged guerrilla warfare that ended in 1898.
14. The German from 1898 onwards tried hard to crack down Mkwawa. They even promised 400 pounds to anybody who could lead to the arrest of chief Mkwawa.
15. The Germans surrounded Mkwawa’s place of refugee. He was forced to escape but the Germans still followed him.
16. Mkwawa on seeing that life had become so precarious (risky and dangerous), he committed suicide.
17. The Germans still got his dead body, cut off the head and took it to Germany only to return it in 1954 after his people had made a lot of noise.
18. His death marked the end of the Hehe resistance.
19. No doubt Mkwawa was a great resistor in the eyes of the German invaders and he will remain in the history of East Africa for quite along period of time.

**EFFECTS OF THE HEHE REBELLION**

1. The effects of the Hehe resistance were positive and negative in nature.
2. They were also political, economic and social in nature.
3. The Hehe were defeated by the Germans.
4. The war led to loss of lives of both the Hehe and the Germans although the Hehe were more affected.
5. The Hehe lost their leader Mkwawa, who was forced to commit suicide.
6. The Hehe completely lost their independence to Germans.
7. The resistance led to loss of land among the Hehe; the Germans completely grabbed the land which the Hehe were resisting.
8. Taxation by the Germans continued as a way of getting revenue from the Africans for the German administration.
9. The war also exposed how harsh, brutal and inhuman the Germans were. This was clearly seen when they cut off Mkwawa’s head and took it to Germany, even after he had committed suicide.
10. After the war, the German missionaries encouraged the spread of Christianity among the Hehe.
11. The Hehe learnt a big lesson from their defeat that indeed the Germans were superior and force would never bring back their lost independence.
12. The Hehe fighters were all disarmed after the war to make them stop their resistance.
13. During the war, the Hehe Capital Kalenga was destroyed by the Germans.
14. The war led to loss of property of both the Hehe and the Germans. The huts, food, and domestic animals were destroyed.
15. As food crops were destroyed, the Hehe suffered from Starvation and famine.
16. The Hehe were forced to resort to collaboration with the Germans colonialists.
17. The Hehe also lost control of the trade they were fighting for.
18. Plantation farming of Sisal and cotton was introduced and the Hehe provided the free labour they were resisting.
19. The Hehe were hit hard by poverty due to scotch earth policy that the Germans also used against them.
20. However, the Germans also learnt a lesson that the Hehe were also human beings that needed the best treatment and peace in their society.

**REASONS WHY THE HEHE WERE DEFEATED**

1. They used inferior weapons, for example, spears, arrows, sticks and stones among others.
2. The Hehe used poor war tactics during the battle, for example standing in the open to face the Germans.
3. The Hehe were few in number and this made them to be easily defeated.
4. The Hehe lacked food supplies during the war as their sources of food were destroyed. The fighters were therefore starved and could not fight well.
5. The Hehe strongly believed in the support of their gods and ancestors which did not help them.
6. They also failed to get support from their neighbours the Yao, Nyamwezi, Ngoni and the coastal Arabs.
7. The scotch earth policy that the Germans used weakened the strength of the Hehe fighters.
8. The Germans were militarily stronger than the Hehe. They had guns like the Maxium guns fired at long range.
9. The war had taken too long and the Hehe had become tired.
10. The Germans also got re-enforcements from Germany against the Germans.
11. The Germans were also determined to bring the Hehe under their control. It was the period of the scramble and partition of African countries.
12. Poor leadership on the side of the Hehe, for example Mkwawa, the leader of the Hehe gave up full scale war and resorted to guerilla warfare which was ineffective.
13. There was also lack of coordination among the Hehe. They were disunited and had internal conflicts.
14. The Berlin conference of 1884-1885 called for European cooperation during the scramble and partition which emphasized effective control.
15. The Hehe like other tribes in East Africa had suffered from natural problems like diseases, drought and other problems.
16. The death of Chief Mkwawa was the final blow to the Hehe resistance against the Germans. When Mkwawa committed suicide and the Germans beheaded him, the Hehe were mesmerized or surprised and they got discouraged and gave up resistance.

**Revision questions**

1. Why did the Hehe rebel against the German rule?
2. Describe the course of the Hehe resistance.
3. Why were they defeated?
4. What were the effects of their resistance?

**THE NANDI RESISTANCE IN KENYA (1895-1906)**

**CAUSES OF THE RESISTANCE**

1. The Nandi belonged to the Nilotes group of Kenya who lived on the western slope of Uasin Gishu plateau.
2. They were animal keepers, warriors and war lovers.
3. They staged a protracted resistance against the British colonial rule.
4. Their resistance started in 1895 and ended in 1906.
5. The Nandi were led by their leader, Chief Orkoyoit.

The causes were many and they included:

1. They resisted the British interference with their independence.
2. The Nandi were war lovers with a lot of experience in raiding. It is not a surprise that they fought the British.
3. They Nandi also fought because of the British interference with their cultural practices. They believed in their cultural superiority.
4. The Nandi all along looked at the whitemen as devils because of the way of their dressing that resembled their devils, hence need to get rid of them.
5. They also resisted loss of their land to the British. They depended so much on their land for survival and yet the British were threatening to take in away from them.
6. The railway construction across their land worsened the situation. The railway line was interpreted to be “iron snake and bringer of bad luck” which had to be uprooted, hence war.
7. The Nandi were also being forced into reserve camps whose condition of living was appalling or terrible and unfit for human survival. They therefore resisted.
8. The strong leadership of Orkoyoit also contributed greatly to this resistance. He could prophesize and even mobilize the Nandi incase of trouble. He prophesized that the foreigners will rule the Nandi forever. This prepared the Nandi for war.
9. The British later killed Prophet Orkoyoit in a very shameful incident. This forced the British to pick up arms in 1895.
10. The British had threatened to take over the Nandi monopoly of trade especially in ivory, hence the Nandi resistance.
11. The Nandi never wanted the British to cross their land. They murdered the British trader, Peter West and his company when he crossed their territory. This forced the British to declare war on the Nandi as a way of revenge.
12. The Nandi’s neighbours like the Masai and Baluyia were collaborating with the British against the Nandi. They could not accept this hence war.
13. The Sudanese and Swahili mercenaries employed by the British had caused a lot of havoc on the Nandi by stealing their foods and other property. This forced the Nandi to intensify their resistance.
14. They also resisted forced labour by the British to work on their plantations and other projects.
15. The Nandi staged a resistance against the British due to the earlier resistance by people like the Hehe and the coastal Arabs under Abushiri in 1880s. They were therefore inspired.
16. They also feared that the British were going to take away their cattle. They had to resist their presence in their area.
17. The British missionaries abused the Nandi culture as backward and barbaric. The Nandi therefore fought them because of this.
18. They also hated the British tendency of overtaxation.
19. The Nandi land was mountainous with very many valleys that acted as hiding places during the war.

**COURSE OF THE NANDI RESISTANCE**

1. With the war experience the Nandi had, they never wanted to accept the British rule.
2. They had even gained supremacy following the decline of powerful states like the Masai.
3. The war started in 1895 after the Nandi killed the British trader, Peter West and his company.
4. In response the British declared war against the Nandi. They reacted by sending a military force against the Nandi.
5. The British forces were made up of the Sudanese and Swahili mercenaries together with the Europeans.
6. The British forces failed to defeat the Nandi.
7. They fought the British for eleven years. They employed all tactics including hit and run. They would attack the British and disappeared in the hills.
8. In their attack, they were kiled the British workers and loot their property.
9. The British tried to arrange for peace talks but the Nandi rejected.
10. The British commander colonel Meinertzhgen visited the Nandi leader, Chief Orkoyoit in a trickery act.
11. As Orkoyoit came out of the house to meet him, he was shot dead together with his men.
12. This completely disorganized the Nandi and their resistance was broken.
13. They were evacuated or removed from an area where the railway line was going to pass. Some of their land was given to the whites.
14. In 1906, the Nandi lost their independence to the British and accepted their dominion or authority.

**WHY IT TOOK TOO LONG TO DEFEAT THE NANDI OR WHY THE NANDI RESISTED THE BRITISH FOR LONG**

The Nandi resistance was a protracted or prolonged war because:

1. They had hiding places like the valleys and caves that the British could not reach easily.
2. Besides, the mountainous nature of the Nandiland could not allow the British use of Maxium guns.
3. The mentality of the Nandi being war lovers kept them in this resistance for long.
4. The prophecy of Orkoyoit kept the Nandi together and with high hope of winning the war.
5. The British fighters also fared the Nandi magic and evil practices, so they needed to study them first.
6. The British had many issues to handle in East Africa, for example the rebellions in Bunyoro and other parts of their colonies.
7. High unity among the Nandi gave them an upper hand in their resistance.
8. Poor transport and communication in the Nandi land worked against the British.
9. The Nandi practiced mixed farming that gave them constant supplies of food to the warriors from both the animals and crops.
10. The Nandi military tactics of hit and run gave the British hard time.
11. The Nandi use to loot food from neighbours and this also gave them additional food supplies.
12. The Nandi were so determined to protect their independence from the British.
13. The experience the Nandi had in warfare with their Neighbours energized them. They had fought and defeated their neighbours like the Masai, Luyia, and Luo among others.
14. The cold and wet climatic condition in the Nandi land did not favour the British.
15. The Nandi soldiers were also well discipline and organised towards a common goal of defeated the British.
16. The British soldiers were not mobile. They were stationed at certain points because they had very many porters to carry their food and other supplies.
17. They Nandi fought in isolation. They did not have defensive points for the British target.

**WHY THE NANDI WERE FINALLY DEFEATED**

1. The belief in magic and superstition did not assist them.
2. The British with time proved militarily stronger than the Nandi.
3. They also used scotch earth policy against the Nandi, for example all the Nandi property, houses, food, and cattle were destroyed.
4. The war had taken too long and the Nandi fighters were already tired. War fatigue therefore worked against them.
5. The British were more determined than the Nandi to meet their mission of colonialism.
6. The neighbours of the Nandi like the Masai, Luyia and Luo collaborated with the British against the Nandi. There was therefore, an act of betrayal against the Nandi.
7. They defeated the Nandi by use of mercenaries from the Sudanese and Swahili people.
8. Fighting in isolation of the Ngoni showed lack of unity. At the end it made the Nandi to be defeated.
9. The Nandi just like other East African states were hit hard by famine, drought and diseases. These weakened them greatly.
10. The treachery act of the British in which they killed the Nandi leader, Chief Orkoyoit demoralized the Nandi.
11. The Nandi also lacked better military tactics.
12. The also lacked constant supplies of weapons and bullets.

**EFFECTS OF THE NANDI RESISTANCE**

1. The effects of the Nandi resistance were positive and negative in nature.
2. They were also political, economic and social in nature
3. The Nandi were totally defeated, they lost their pride, arrogance and superiority.
4. They also lost their independence to the British.
5. They learnt a great lesson from their resistance that the British were more superior and that force will never get back their independence.
6. Thousands of people perished during the war.
7. On a very sad note, the resistance led to the death of the Nandi leader, Chief Orkoyoit.
8. Property too was destroyed massively, for example, cattle, food, huts and others. The British soldiers also looted much more of the Nandi foodstuffs.
9. Many Nandi people were displaced by the war.
10. The British learnt a lesson too that it was not good to mistreat the people they were leading.
11. Christianity gained ground in the Nandi land. Many people were converted to Christianity.
12. As war went on agriculture was disrupted, food supply dwindled and famine therefore hit the Nandi area.
13. To stop further resistance from the Nandi, the British pushed the Nandi to camps or reserves.
14. More white settlers came and settled in the Nandi land in big number.
15. The railway construction which the Nandi were partly resisting went on.
16. Internal trade was also disrupted as war went on.
17. The war was very costly. The British spent a lot of money to suppress the rebellion.
18. The British grabbed the Nandi land and opened plantations.
19. The Nandi were then forced to provide cheap labour by force to the British plantations.
20. There was also wide spread of poverty and sufferings among the Nandi.
21. A number of Forts were constructed in many parts of the Nandiland to keep close watch on the Nandi.
22. The defeat of the Nandi was a proof to what their leader Orkoyoit had prophesize that the foreigners would for ever rule them.

**THE MAJI-MAJI REBELLION OF 1905- 1907 IN TANGANYIKA**

**CAUSES OF MAJI MAJI REBELLION**

1. The rebellion took place in Southern Tanganyika and was against German rule.
2. It involved a cross section of tribes, for example the Bena, Zaramo, Wangindo and Mbuga among others.
3. The rebellion got its name from the “Magic water”, Maji-Maji given by a medicine man called Kinjikitile Ngwalwe, a Matumbi by tribe who lived on River Rufigi in Ngarambe village.
4. The rebellion begun in 1905 and ended in 1907.
5. It was “a brain child” or masterminded by Kinjikitile Ngwale a traditional priest.

It was fought due to:

1. Unsuccessful cotton scheme that was introduced by the Germans in Tanganyika.
2. The Germans had also subjected the Africans to forced cotton growing especially on the German farms.
3. Forced labour on government farms and public works greatly annoyed the natives   
   of Tanzania.
4. Heavy taxation to the Tanzanians of three rupees was yet another cause of the Maji-Maji rebellion.
5. The need to get independence from the colonial rule of the Germans by the Tanzanians.
6. The Germans greatly undermined the African cultures which annoyed the Tanzanians greatly.
7. Loss of land to the Germans by the poor Africans through “land alienation”
8. Complete disrespect for local customs of the people of Tanganyika, for example the Germans act of moving in mosques with dogs even during the holy month of Ramadan.
9. The Germans committed adultery with African wives. They would force the Wangindo girls into sexual relations and even infect them with venereal diseases. This was a great humiliation to the people of Tanganyika especially men hence the revolt.
10. The role played by Kinjikitile’s misinformation and false confidence he gave to the natives of Tanganyika made the Africans to pick up arms.
11. Replacement of African chiefs or rulers by the Germans with Akidas and Jumbe also led to this rebellion.
12. The Akidas and Jumbe were too harsh on to the Africans, that is to say they would conduct public flogging of the Africans.
13. Poor methods of tax collection where the Africans were battered in public. It was a big humiliation.
14. The struggle to control trade as monopolists. The Germans had edged out or displaced the African middlemen in all the trading activities in Tanganyika.
15. The Germans gave help and refuge to a young man who had seduced a king’s wife. The Africans therefore had to attack the Germans for protecting a social misfit.
16. Generally the German administration was too oppressive and harsh, for matter of clarity, Karl Peters the champion of direct rule was nick named “MUKONO WADAMU” meaning hand of blood. It alleged that at one time he castrated a certain young man who had attacked him for eloping with his girl friend.

**COURSE OF MAJI-MAJI** **REBELLION**

1. The rebellion took place in Southern Tanganyika.
2. It involved the Zaramo, Wangido, Bena, and Ngoni among other tribes.
3. The areas where the war directly occurred included Chumo Kibata, Miteja, Samanga, Kinjumbi in Matumbi.
4. With all the problems of the natives of Tanzania, there emerged among the Wamatumbi a prophet called “Kinjikitile Ngwale” who claimed super-natural powers.
5. Kinjikitile stood up to lead a revolt against the Germans using the forces of religion and traditional belief as the basis of his organisation.
6. Near Kinjikitile’s home at Ngarambe, there was a pool of water from a tributary of the Rufigi River, which he claimed was the place of the devil spirit “HOGO which possessed him.
7. Kinjikitile began to preach about the need for blackmen to unite, emphasizing that his medicine “the Magic water” was more powerful than European weapons.
8. Kinjikitile’s gospel spread like a bush fire among the Wamatunabi, Zaramo, Wangido, Bena and others.
9. By July 1905, a secret communication from one person to another about the emergence at Ngarambe known as “Jail” was formed.
10. The Germans were alarmed on hearing the news of a possible outbreak of a rebellion and sent a messenger to prove this.
11. The messenger confirmed the possibility of a rebellion in Ngarambe village.
12. At Ngarambe, Kinjikitile, who had assumed the title “Bokero” meaning the intermediary between men and spirits, gave them the medicine, a mixture of sorghum flour in water, which was smeared on the fore-ahead.
13. In 1905, the rebellion started in Pogoro and Gindo but spread to Lindi and Kilosa in the North.
14. The rebellion among other reasons was against forceful cotton growing in southern Tanganyika yet with little payment.
15. The rebels therefore targeted cotton plantations, cotton stores and the German officials.
16. In July 1905, In Matumbi hills, people refused to pick cotton.
17. To make matters worse the Wamatumbi went ahead to carry out very annoying things to Germans like uprooting cotton plants at Nandeta plantations.
18. Such provocative actions bitterly upset the Germans into declaration of war against natives of Southern Tanzania.
19. On 31stjuly, 1905, the Germans attacked the Wamatumbi.
20. It must be clearly observed that the rebellion started spreading with a lot of rapidity to other places like Ngindo, Mbuga, Bena, Pogoro and other areas for a national struggle.
21. But the Hehe and Nyamwezi pulled out of the war because of earlier lesson from their rebellions which were seriously defeated.
22. The rebellion took on a very destructive nature; the natives clearly destroyed mission and administrative posts of the Germans especially at Samanga which was located just near Kilwa town. In here, several German administrators were either killed or tortured.
23. Just before the end of 1905, the natives attacked and put massive damage to villages like Mahenge, Lukuledi valley and so on.
24. Seeing that things were going out of hand, the Germans appealed for support from their home government which was brought in before 1906.
25. They even hired the support of the Sudanese mercenaries who helped them crack down the rebels.
26. With home support, the Germans got an upper hand over the natives of Tanzania, the Germans hunted for the leaders of the rebellion upon which more than 40 chiefs and sub-chiefs were rounded up and killed including Abdullah Mpande which greatly horrified and terrified the Africans.
27. Kinjikitile the ring leader was also killed.
28. The rebellion was virtually over before the end of 1907 with the Germans as the victors and the Africans as the Vanquished or defeated group.

**EFFECTS OF THE MAJI MAJI REBELLION**

1. The rebellion had more destructive effects though it even had positive effects.
2. The effects were also political, social and economic in nature.
3. The Africans were defeated by Germans.
4. There was heavy loss of lives, that is to say over 75,000 people were killed.
5. After the defeat of the Africans, the Germans re-established their rule over Tanganyika.
6. There was also massive destruction of property, for example on 2nd, August 1905; the whole coastal town of Samanga was destroyed into ashes by the Africans.
7. The Africans lost trust in their traditional religion because it did not help them as claimed by the medicine man, Kinjikitile Ngwalwe.
8. Many Africans were displaced during the rebellion.
9. The Africans realized the superiority of the Germans.
10. The Africans did not get their independence, yet they were fighting for it.
11. Famine resulted after destruction of plantations.
12. Depopulation of African societies was yet another serious effect of this rebellion.
13. Though it had failed, the rebellion inspired other rebellions later.
14. Nationalists like Julius Kambarage Nyerere emerged to struggle for the independence of Tanganyika.
15. There was a change in German administration for the betterment of the Africans.
16. The old Governor was sacked and replaced by Von Rechenburg and was instructed to handle the affairs of Tanganyika with a lot of care so that no any other rebellion occurred again.
17. Harsh Akidas and Jumbes were sacked immediately.
18. Corporal punishments were ended in Tanganyika.
19. Taxes were revised and lowered for the betterment of the people of Tanganyika.
20. Mistreatment of Africans by the Germans ended.
21. Swahili was made the officia1 language.
22. Health services like hospitals were extended to the people Tanganyika.
23. Western education was encouraged among the people of Tanganyika.
24. The war was very costly to both sides.
25. Africans were economically exhausted by the rebellion.

**Revision questions**

1. What factors led to the Maji-Maji rebellion of 1905 - 1907?
2. Describe the course of Maji Maji rebellion of 1905 -1907?
3. What were the effects of the above rebellion?

**CHAPTER 17**

**EXAMPLES OF SOME PERSONALITIES WHO RESISTED COLONIAL RULE IN EAST AFRICA**

1. **CHIEF AWICH OF PAYIIRA.**
2. **KABAKA MWANGA OF BUGANDA.**
3. **CHIEF MKWAWA OF THE HEHE.**
4. **ABUSHIRI, THE LEADER OF THE COASTAL ARABS.**
5. **OMUKAMA KABALEGA OF BUNYORO.**

**(a) CHIEF AWICH OF PAYIIRA**

1. Chief Awich was the chief (Rwot) of Payiira in Acholi.
2. Awich came to power in 1880’s after the death of his beloved father Rwot Can moo.
3. Chief Awich was one of the greatest resistors, who resisted the British rule.
4. Chief Awich carried constant attacks against the British Commissioner at Nimule in Southern Sudan.
5. He gave asylum (refuge) to Kabalega as the British were hunting for him which intensified British hostility to him.
6. It was chief Awich of Payiira who refused to endorse (sign) any treaty of co-operation in Acholi land whereas other Acholi chiefs had done so in l892.
7. Awich assisted Kabalega’s soldiers against the British which made the British to force him to expel the soldiers of Kabalega, but he refused.
8. The British attacked him in 1901 under the command of Harman. He was defeated and imprisoned in Kololo in Kampala.
9. As he was kept under lock, his people greatly revolted and claimed for his release, especially because the British had practically failed to establish effective rule in their area.
10. Before April 1902, chief Awich was returned to lead his people of payiira.
11. Whereas, the British through Colonel Macdonald made threats to chief Awich of Payiira to refrain from resisting the British, the chief refused.
12. In 1912, the British alleged that chief Awich had kept several guns from Arab traders, when the British insisted that the Acholi in his areas should register their guns, Awich refused the demand.
13. Chief Awich inspired his people into a rebellion against the British known as the Lamogi rebellion.
14. Upon all the above activities chief Awich was charged again at Nimule. While the court proceeded or was going on, it is said that chief Awich lost his temper and only reacted by slapping, other writers say by boxing the British prosecutor Sollven.
15. Chief Awich was again imprisoned in Kololo, given a fine of a number of heads of cattle and ivory
16. Unfortunately chief Awich died in 1920s having tried tooth and nail or in vain to resist the British rule in Acholiland.

**b) KABAKA MWANGA (1866-**

1. Mwanga was born, in 1866 and he came to power when still a youth of only 18 years.
2. Kabaka Mwanga came to power in 1884 after the death of his father Mutesa I.
3. Mwanga inherited the throne when there were different religious groups, that is to say the Catholics, Protestants, African traditionalists and Muslims.
4. Mwanga under the influence of traditionalists was totally against Europeans.
5. Mwanga tried to maintain his authority by killing three Christian converts in 1885.
6. In 1885 still, Mwanga ordered for the killing of Bishop Hannington who was approaching his Kingdom from the Eastern direction, yet the soothsayer had predicted that whoever would be approaching his Kingdom from that direction would be the one to overthrow him.
7. Mwanga’s hardened heart character had been partly a result of Mwanga reigning (ruling) at a time of real troubles in Buganda.
8. The poor man ruled when there were serious religious factions in his Kingdom.
9. Bunyoro his neigbouring state was growing from strength to strength each and everyday.
10. The European powers were increasing their hold all over E. African territories.
11. Mwanga’s anger with the Christians was still exemplified by his act of killing 30 Christians at Namugongo for refusing to denounce Christianity.
12. In September 1888, Mwanga was deposed by combined Muslim, Catholic, Protestant forces and replaced by his brother Kiwewa.
13. In October 1889 Mwanga regained the throne after deposing Kiweewa with the   
    Moslem supporters.
14. Mwanga emphasized traditional laws against British law which greatly up-set Frederick. Lugard.
15. Mwanga managed to overcome the struggle of the WaFransa- Wangereza Wars (religious wars in Uganda).
16. In 1897, Mwanga staged a rebellion against Lugard and after failing, he fled to Tanganyika.
17. He had joined with chief Awich to fight against British in Northern Uganda.
18. Still Mwanga joined hands with Kabalega in Northern Uganda, Lango at a place called Kangai to fight the British.
19. Mwanga and Kabalega were captured by Semei Kakungulu who handed them over to the British.
20. Mwanga was exiled in Seychelles Island.
21. **CHIEF MKWAWA**
22. Mkwawa was the leader of Hehe Society.
23. He came to power in 1878 after succeeding his father Mungyigumba.
24. Mkwawa led one of the greatest resistances against German authority during the 19th century.
25. Mkwawa had his own problem with the Germans, that is to say the Germans had wanted to depose him; they were not at all comfortable with Mkwawa’s prosperity from trade.
26. It was therefore the above factors and others that forced Mkwawa to rebel against the Germans.
27. In June 1891, a German force of more than one hundred troops advanced from Kilwa to attack Mkwawa.
28. M kwawa, the Hehe chief was ready for them, but still hoping that war could be avoided, he sent un armed men with presents to meet the visitors and assure them of his friendly intentions
29. The Germans instead completely frustrated Mkwawa only by opening up fire against them and several of Mkwawa’s men were killed.
30. Mkwawa’s hope for peace was surely got eliminated.
31. Mkwawa was too quick to ask his soldiers to attack with a lot of rapidity or speed; the German invaders including their leader “Zewlesky” were completely damaged.
32. The German garrison at Kilosa was attacked and all its occupants were killed.
33. A fresh German expedition led by Von Prince attacked Mkwawa’s fort at Kalenga and captured it in 1804 after fierce resistance.
34. At this very stage, Mkwawa escaped and resorted to prolonged guerrilla warfare that ended in 1898.
35. The German from 1898 on wards tried hard to crack down Mkwawa, seeing that life had become so precarious (risky and dangerous), Mkwawa committed suicide.
36. The Germans still got his dead body, cut off the head and took it to Germany only to return in 1954 after his people had made a lot of noise.
37. His death marked the end of the Hehe resistance.
38. No doubt, Mkwawa was a great resistor in the eyes of German invaders, and he will remain in the history of East Africa for quite along period.
39. **CHIEF ABUSHIRI**
40. Chief Abushiri was a leader of the Arab coastal resistance to the German and British Colonisation in East Africa.
41. Chief Abushiri was born in 1845 to an Arab Father and from a Galla mother.
42. He was a descendant of one the first Arab settlers on the coast of East Africa and a member of a group who had come to regard themselves as local people.
43. Like many others, he opposed the influence of the Sultanate of Zanzibar on the coast and even advocate for independence.
44. As a young man, Abushiri had organised expeditions into the interior of East Africa to trade in ivory.
45. From the profits he made out of trade, he bought himself a farm and planted sugarcane.
46. He was also engaged in a campaign against the Nyamwezi which enabled him to assemble warriors who were later to be used against the Germans.
47. Under Abushiri’s 1eadership the coastal people fired on a German warship at Tanga in September 1888 and gave the Germans two days to leave the coast, they later attacked Kilwa and killed two Germans there.
48. But the Germans who termed this, the Arab revolt sent out Hermann Von Wissman, who reached Zanzibar in April 1889, attacked Abushiri in his fortress near Bagamoyo and drove him out.
49. Abushiri escaped northwards to Uzigua where he was betrayed and handed over to the Germans who hanged him at Pangani on 15th December 1889.
50. The coastal resistance finally collapsed when Kilwa was bombarded and taken by the Germans in May 1890.
51. **OMUKAMA KABALEGA OF BUNYORO**
52. Kabalega was born in 1850 to Omukama Kyebambe Kamurasi IV who reigned from 1852-1869. Kabalega’s mother was called Nyamitaligwa.
53. Kabalega spent his early life in Bulega with his mother when his father was deposed briefly.
54. When in Bulega, he was referred to as “Akana ka Bulega” meaning “the stubborn child from Bulega” because of his doggedness, hence the name Kabalega.
55. It was life in Bulega that shaped kabalega’s character and made him developed love for his people.
56. In 1870 Kabalega rose to power after defeating his brother Katigumire in a succession struggle when their father died in 1869.
57. He faced problem from the European imperialists, for example in 1872 Sir Samuel Baker fought Kabalega in a battle of Isasha in Mubende but Baker’s forces were defeated.
58. Lugard also made several attacks on Kabalega in 1891 but never succeeded.
59. In 1894, colonel Colville was sent to defeat Bunyoro.
60. Kabalega was therefore forced to fight war of resistance against the British because of such attacks.

**The causes of Kabalega’s resistance:**

1. The need to protect his kingdom’s freedom.
2. Kabalega had adopted the character of his father who was naturally a fighter.
3. Besides he had just organised his army and conquered a number of areas like Buddu. There was need to protect those changes.
4. The experience Kabalega underwent when he saw his father being overthrown made him to re-organize himself to take over Bunyoro leadership.
5. Kabalega believed so much in his army, the Barusura.
6. Kabalega had heard about the dangers of the whiteman, for example they had led to Buganda’s loss of independence, taken over trade, land and abused their culture. Kabalega therefore could not accept the same in his Kingdom.
7. Bunyoro’s enemies Tooro and Buganda had collaborated with the British, hence need to crush them.
8. Kabalega fought the British because he wanted to protect loss of his resources like minerals, land among others.
9. Bunyoro was feared all over the great lakes region as a super power, hence there was need to protect this pride.
10. The Banyoro were united and it was easy to organise for war.
11. Bunyoro had fought very many wars. The wide experience in war therefore assisted her to resist the whites.
12. They were encouraged by the defeat of Samuel Baker at the Isasha battle in Mubende.

**THE COURSE OF KABALEGA RESISTANCE**

1. Sir Samuel Baker had signed an agreement with Kabalega in which Baker promised to protect Bunyoro against her enemies.
2. Kabalega later realized how dangerous the whiteman could be dangerous and he decided to fight Baker.
3. Baker brought his Egyptian forces against Kabalega and they were defeated at Isansha in Mubende.
4. Kabalega attacked and captured Tooro under Kasagama in 1890 because he believed that he was collaborating with the British, his enemies.
5. Lugard later organised a large force against Kabalega and defeated him. He then built a number of Forts on the boarders between Tooro and Bunyoro to prevent any further attacks on Tooro by Kabalega.
6. Kabalega then signed a peace agreement with the British but it was short lived because he later attacked Tooro.
7. In 1894, combined forces of British, Sudanese and Buganda soldiers under colonel Colville were sent to Bunyoro to crush Kabalega’s resistance.
8. He was overpowered and later hid in Budongo forest where he employed guerilla warfare (hit and run military tactics) between 1893 and 1897.
9. Kabalega was later smoked out of Budongo forest by Colville’s forces.
10. Apparently Kabalega escaped to Lango where he took refuge at a place called Kangai in Dokolo. He was joined by his counter part Mwanga of Buganda kingdom that was also experiencing similar problems.
11. In 1879 a group of soldiers under the commander of Semei Kakungulu, a collaborator was sent to capture him.
12. Kabalega and Mwanga were captured at Kangai and exiled in the Seychelles Island in the Indian Ocean Island.
13. Kabalega was later return at the age of 73 years when he could not resist but he died on his way to Bunyoro at Busoga.

**EFFECTS OF BUNYORO RESISTANCE**

1. Bunyoro kingdom lost the resistance to the British and a result lost her independence.
2. Kabalega therefore was exiled in the Seychelles Island after his defeat.
3. Peace returned to Bunyoro’s neighbours like Tooro and Buganda.
4. There was loss of independence of Bunyoro under Kabalega.
5. There was massive loss of lives of the Banyoro.
6. Property too was destroyed.
7. Bunyoro was then ruled with the assistance of Buganda agents.
8. There arose hatred and enmity between Buganda and Bunyoro because Buganda assisted the British to have Bunyoro defeated.
9. When Kabalega died Bunyoro lacked a leader and that marked the end of Bunyoro’s resistance.
10. The Banyoro learnt a lesson that the British were stronger in all aspects and that force will never wind back their independence.
11. The chiefs who rallied behind their leader Kabalega were arrested and jailed.
12. The Bunyoro resistance laid a foundation for other rebellions in Bunyoro like the Nyangire rebellion.
13. Forced cotton growing was introduced in Bunyoro after cotton was grown.
14. The people in Bunyoro lived in fear and panic.

**Revision question**

* + 1. Describe the response of any TWO of the following personalities to the establishment of colonial rule in their areas: a) Chief Awich b) Kabaka Mwanga c) Omukama Kabalega d) Chief Mkwawa e) Chief Abushiri.
    2. Why did Kabalega resist against the British?
    3. Describe the course of Bunyoro resistance under Kabalega.
    4. What were the effects of Kabalega’s resistance?

**CHAPTER 18  
POLITICAL DEVELOPMENT IN THE BRITISH PROTECTORATE AFTER THE SCRAMBLE AND PARTITION OF EAST AFRICA**

**THE BUGANDA AGREEMENT OF 1900**

**WHY THE BUGANDA AGREEMENT WAS SIGNED**

1. The Buganda Agreement was a binding document that was signed between Baganda under the young Kabaka Daudi Chwa, who was represented by his regents in the names of, Apollo Kaggwa, Stanlus Mugwanya, Zakaria Kisingiri and the British Commissioner Sir Harry Johnstone.
2. It was signed on 10th march, 1900.  
   The agreement was signed because of the following reasons:
3. It was part of the British colonial effort to strengthen her administration in Uganda for   
   effective occupation.
4. The agreement was signed to formalise British rule over Buganda.
5. It was intended for the British to tighten their hold over Uganda.
6. It was signed to restore law and order that had been torn apart by the political religious wars in Buganda.
7. The 1900 Buganda agreement was also signed to introduce and stimulate cash crop growing so as to meet imperialistic interest. This would be done by tapping raw materials and minerals.
8. It was signed to make Buganda pay for her own administration.
9. The agreement was signed to define the boundaries of Buganda.
10. It was signed to give Buganda her special privileges from the rest of Uganda, which was in line with the principle of divide and rule.
11. It was intended for the British to have firm authority over Uganda by having their base in Buganda.
12. It was signed to deal with the hostile Omukama Kabalega of Bunyoro once and for all.
13. It was to answer the call from the Christian Missionary Society to help the young King Daudi Chwa.
14. It was also signed to act as a legal document upon which the British were to base their imperialism.
15. It was signed to make Buganda act as the nucleus of British imperialism in Uganda.
16. It was to clearly define the relationship between Buganda and the British colonial government.
17. It was to act as a proof for Britain’s official taking over of Buganda and finally the whole of Uganda.

**TERMS OF THE 1900 BUGANDA AGREEMENT**

1. The 1900 Buganda agreement had a number of provisions or resolutions which were political and economic in nature.
2. The terms also covered major issues like Administration, revenue, and land.
3. **Politically** Buganda was to be ruled by the Kabaka but with instructions from the British.
4. The Kabaka was to be assisted by: The Prime Minster (Katikkiro), the Chief Justice (Omulamuzi) and the Treasurer (Omuwanika).
5. The laws of Buganda were to remain in place but were not to conflict with the protectorate laws.
6. All cases involving foreigners were to be handled by the protectorate government.
7. The Kabaka was to remain a cultural leader of Buganda and to get the title of “His Highness Sir”.
8. The Kabaka was to work under the close supervision of the British representative.
9. Kabaka was to earn a salary for his work worth 1,500 pounds.
10. The Kabaka was not to elect or dismiss any member of the Lukiiko without seeking British permission.
11. The Kabaka was not to form any armed body minus the knowledge of the protectorate government.
12. Buganda’s boundaries were to be formalized to include the lost counties of Buyaga and Bugangaizi which belonged to Bunyoro. They were to be added to Buganda as a reward for her role in the extension of colonial rule there.
13. Buganda was to be part of the British protectorate and Uganda at large and not to remain an independent state.
14. The Lukiiko was to be a legislative body made up of 89 members, with 66 notable members elected by the Kabaka, 20 county chiefs and the 3 ministers.
15. The Lukiiko would also serve as the highest court of appeal.
16. **Economically** the Lukiiko was to approve all taxes.
17. The king and his chiefs were to be paid salaries for their work.
18. All minerals and forests were to belong to the protectorate government.
19. Land was to be divided into two namely: Crown land which would include rivers, forests, Mountains and would be under the control of the British. Then Mailo land to be controlled by the Kabaka. This land was to be given to the Kabaka, his family members and ministers. It would be measured in miles hence the word “Mailo “land coined from Luganda.
20. All men who had attained 18 years were to pay a tax of 3 rupees which was to be collected by local chiefs.
21. The income or revenue collected from taxes was to go to the protectorate government and not to the Kabaka.
22. All natural resources like lakes, rivers, swamps and so on were to be land of the protectorate government.
23. Cash crops were to be grown with encouragement from the protectorate government.
24. There was to be no more collection of tributes from other states like Bunyoro by Buganda.
25. Taxes from Buganda were to be merged with those from other kingdoms and given to the protectorate government.
26. There was to be two versions of the agreement namely: Luganda version and the English version but the English version would abrogate or officially end the Luganda version.

**THE RESULTS /IMPACTS / EFFECTS OF BUGANDA AGREEMENT OF 1900**

1. Buganda was used as a springboard or a launch pad or facilitator for the extension of British rule to other parts of Uganda.
2. The Kabaka’s power was greatly undermined.
3. The Kabaka’s political powers were reduced to a merely “a constitutional monarchy”. He was made just a figure head or ceremonial leader.
4. The Kabaka lost his judicial powers and could no longer pass death sentences.
5. The Kabaka lost control over his chiefs since they were now to be paid by the colonial government.
6. The Lukiiko became the legislature or the law making body.
7. The agreement empowered the Christian and Moslem chiefs who collaborated with the British. The chiefs who worked to promote the colonial interest gained a lot from their activities.
8. The king lost powers over the army; he could no longer raise an army without the   
   British consent.
9. The Kabaka lost powers over the revenue of Buganda.
10. The agreement favoured Buganda’s position within the protectorate but not other Kingdoms.
11. It created land nobility which at times led to landlessness among the peasants   
    who became squatters. A class of land owners and the land less existed in Buganda.
12. It confirmed the lost counties to Buganda that is to say, Buyaga and Bugangaizi which became a source of hostility between the two Kingdoms.
13. Buganda and Uganda at large lost independence up to 1962.
14. It created new classes of people namely: the land lords, tenants and the landless.
15. Buganda collaborated in extending British rule over Uganda.
16. Infrastructural developments in form of roads, hospitals, schools were extended to many parts of Buganda.
17. It ended the political and religious wars in Buganda.
18. It officially formalised British presence in Uganda at large and Buganda in particularly.
19. Buganda’s revenue was to be combined with those of other kingdoms and taken over by the colonial government.
20. It defined once and for all the boundaries of Buganda within Uganda.
21. It brought the idea of graduated tax into Uganda.
22. Britain was able to exploit Uganda economically.
23. Cash crops like cotton and coffee among others were encouraged to be grown in Uganda.
24. It cleared the ground thoroughly for the abolition of Kingdoms in Uganda.
25. The agreement elevated the British position in Uganda than ever before.

**THE ROLE PLAYED BY SIR HARRY JOHNSTONE AS AN IMPERIALIST IN UGANDA.**

1. Harry Johnstone was one of the most outstanding imperialists in Uganda. He came to East Africa in 1884.
2. On arriving in East Africa he settled briefly at Zanzibar before moving to Kilimanjaro areas where he later set up his base at Moshi.
3. Around the Kilimanjaro areas, Harry Johnstone was able to make friendship with the Chagga and Taveta.
4. On 27th September 1884, Johnstone signed a treaty of friendship with Taveta Chiefs. He was given a lot of land where he planted wheat.
5. Harry Johnstone was made a special commissioner to Uganda by the British government in 1899.
6. By appointing him a special commissioner to Uganda, Britain had wanted to reduce the cost of its administration which was rising each time.
7. Through Johnstone, Uganda as a colony started paying for the cost of their administration.
8. He made sure Uganda as the British colony contributed in collection of taxes.
9. Harry Johnstone was very influential in the signing of the 1900 Buganda agreement which saw Buganda and later Uganda falling under the control of the British.
10. He liaised with the Christian missionaries and used them to convince the regents to sign the Buganda agreement.
11. In the signing of the agreement, Johnstone was able to convince the three regents; Stanlus Mugwanya, Zakaria Kisingiri and Apollo Kaggwa to include revenue in the terms of the agreement. Hut tax and gun tax of three rupees each were therefore to be collected.
12. Johnstone confirmed the British authority over Buganda and Uganda at large. This was done through the agreement he signed with Buganda in 1900.
13. In the agreement signed by Harry Johnstone, half of Buganda was made land owned by the British government, Crown land. He therefore acquired land in Uganda for the British government.
14. Sir Harry Johnstone is remembered as an imperialist for extending the British control over Tooro and Ankole regions. He signed agreements with the leaders of these regions and he was able to get revenue, land and authority over them.

**THE DEVONSHIRE WHITE PAPER OF 1923**

**FACTORS THAT LED TO THE DECLARATION OF THE DEVONSHIRE WHITE PAPER OF 1923**

1. The name Devonshire was acquired from the then colonial secretary, Duke of Devonshire.
2. The Duke of Devonshire issued a white paper to clarify the British position on issues raised by the conflicts between the Asians and the white settlers.
3. Land and political rights were the main issues in the dispute.
4. Europeans had continued to have an upper hand in politics of Kenya against other races like the Africans and Asians, for example in 1907, the Europeans had been given seats in the legislative council and in 1920 their number was tremendously increased but not the Asians and poor Africans
5. Previously in 1918, the Europeans had been given seats even on the executive council but not the other races.
6. Europeans had gained the most fertile lands in Kenya, the Kenyan Highlands but not the Asians and Africans.
7. The Europeans had totally refused to Asians demands for equal treatment.
8. Devonshire white paper was declared to combat racial segregation in schools and hospitals.
9. The Asians wanted unrestricted immigration within East Africa just like it was the case with Europeans.
10. It was declared to create a platform upon which European view were to be heard.
11. Africans wanted withdrawal of the “Kipande” system that restricted their movements.
12. Africans wanted to push for the reduction of taxes, especially hut tax.
13. Africans needed to get more favourable working conditions.
14. The Kikuyu and other Africans wanted to regain their land.
15. In 1921, there was a cut in wages which was meant to make Africans stay in employment longer.
16. In 1923, a conference was summoned in London by the colonial secretary “The Duke of Devonshire” to deal with all the above racial problems.
17. After the conference, a paper or document was written known as the “1923 Devonshire White Paper”.

**TERMS OF THE DEVONSHIRE WHITE PAPER**

1. The terms of the Devonshire white paper were to raise solution to the racial conflicts in Kenya.
2. It was declared that Kenya was primarily an African territory and as such, the interests of Africans were to be important.
3. Kenyan highlands were to be reserved for only the whites’ settlement.
4. The document declared policies of racial discrimination in residential areas null and void.
5. The Asians were to move freely into Kenya.
6. The Asians were to elect five members to the Legislative council.
7. A missionary was to be elected on the Legislative council to represent the interests of the Africans; Dr Arthur was elected to this effect.
8. The document was to recognize the contribution of the Europeans community in the development of Kenya.’
9. It declared that there was not to be any further advance towards self government in the near future. That Kenya was to be under Europeans.
10. It declared that the British colonial office was to watch over Kenya’s affairs and preserve the African interest.
11. Asian had to be represented on the Municipal Councils.

**EFFECTS OF THE DEVONSHIRE WHITE PAPER**

1. The paper confirmed the whites’ settlement on the Kenya highlands. The highlands were reserved for the European settlers only.
2. The Asians elected five members to the Legislative council as per the terms of the agreement.
3. The Asians were represented on the Municipal councils. This was stipulated in the terms of the agreement.
4. Racial segregation in residential areas ended or stopped.
5. There was to be no further advance towards settler domination.
6. The Africans interests gained importance than before.
7. It led to the development of Kenya into a more multi-racial society than before.
8. It frustrated the Africans and Asians, as some of their interests were not handled.
9. The dream of the whites to control Kenya as a racist country was completely shattered and given a death blow.
10. It acted as a reminder that the Africans would not be dominated by either whites or Asians for long.
11. The Asians and Africans were denied access to Kenya highlands.
12. It brought unity of purpose between the Asians and Africans, after all the Europeans had been given an upper hand against both the Africans and Asians.
13. It led to the establishment of the East African high commission to try and normalize relations between Africans and Asians with Europeans.
14. It aided and facilitated massive migration of Indians into Kenya due to free immigration that was granted to them.
15. Land and labour problems were not well handled which in the end partly caused the Mau-Mau rebellion in the 1950s.
16. Insecurity and hostility was cultivated within Kenya as the issues among the Asians, Europeans and Africans were left unsettled.  **Note that** sometimes one is expected to either specifically give the effects on only the Africans, the Asians, Europeans or on the races generally.

**REACTIONS OF THE ASIANS AND WHITE SETTLERS TO THE WHITE PAPER**

1. The white settlers were disappointed because they were denied control over Kenyan affairs.
2. Lord Delemare, a white farmer opposed the resolutions of the white paper.
3. The white settlers insisted to rule over the Africans.
4. The Asians refused to elect their members to the legislative council until 1933.
5. The Asians were annoyed with unequal representation in the legislative council which was not granted.
6. The Asians opposed the preservation of Kenya high lands for white settlers.
7. The Europeans continued to fight to control the government of Kenya by having the majority members on the legislative Council.
8. Asians continued to voice their social and political inequality with Europeans.
9. Asians refused to pay separate taxes which were not those of the Europeans.

**Revision questions**

1. Explain the factors which led the Declaration of Devonshire of 1923.
2. What were some of the clauses / terms of Devonshire white paper of 1923?
3. What were the effects of the Devonshire white paper?

How did the Asians and Africans react the terms of the Devonshire Whit Paper?

**CHAPTER 19  
POLITICAL DEVELOPMENTS IN UGANDA DURING THE COLONIAL PERIOD**

**THE KABAKA CRISIS IN BUGANDA IN 1953**

**CAUSES OF THE KABAKA CRISIS OF 1953 IN BUGANDA**

1. Like the name suggest, the Kabaka crisis in Buganda was a situation of serious political disagreements between the colonial government under Sir Andrew Cohen, the then British governor in Uganda and the Kingdom of Buganda under Kabaka Mutesa II.
2. The event was so memorable in that the Kabaka had to be deported to England on 30thNovember 1953.
3. The Kabaka crisis therefore was a trying moment not to only the British government but to also Buganda specifically and Uganda at large.

The causes were:

1. The desire of Buganda to get her independence from Uganda, that is to say the need for Buganda to establish an Independent entity outside Uganda.
2. The British on the other hand wanted to dominate Buganda fully.
3. The controversial or contentious opinions between the Kabaka and the colonial governor. The Kabaka and the members of Lukiiko objected to the idea of East African federation.
4. Kabaka Mutesa II needed more political power which the colonial governor could not accept.
5. The Baganda were too confident and determined to attain Independence.
6. Kabaka Mutesa II wanted to restore the glory of Buganda as exemplified by its rich history in the pre- colonial period.
7. The aggressive nature of the then colonial governor of Uganda, Sir Andrew Cohen led to this crisis.
8. Buganda had totally rejected the reforms made by the Governor like setting up elected local councils.
9. The emergency of young, energetic and politically vibrant Baganda like Abu-Mayanja and Ben Kiwanuka among others helped to create the crisis.
10. Buganda was totally oppressed to the idea of the East- African federation where she knew that her position as a kingdom would be sidelined or submerged into East African federation.
11. The overwhelmingly support that the Baganda always gave to their Kabaka made him to think that he was unchallengeable.
12. The Kabaka’s complete failure to co-operate with the colonial administration at the time, created a state with in a state hence leading to the Kabaka crisis.
13. The most immediate factor inevitably was the deportation of the Kabaka by the colonial administration that annoyed and surprised the Baganda.

**EFFECTS OF THE KABAKA CRISIS**

1. Buganda became more united for her demands.
2. The idea of uniting of East Africa states into a federation was completely given a death blow.
3. The Kabaka’s going into exile removed any sympathy of Baganda toward the colonial governor under Sir Andrew Cohen.
4. More political parties were formed in Buganda to act as a forum for Buganda’s interests and Uganda in general, for example Democratic Party in 1956, Uganda People’s Congress in 1960, among others.
5. The Kabaka was made to be responsible to members of Lukiiko and even the governor.
6. It inspired or encouraged the growth of nationalism in Buganda although it was a tribalistic nationalism.
7. The Kabaka purely became a constitutional monarchy.
8. It spear headed the struggle for independence starting from Buganda to other areas of Uganda.
9. A group of people that included Thomas Makumbi and Apollo Kironde among others went to London to ask for the release of the Kabaka.
10. The Kabaka returned in Buganda in 1955, which was a sign of victory to the Baganda.
11. It resulted into the signing of the Namirembe agreement on 18th October 1955, which tried to revisit or revise the 1900 Buganda agreement.
12. It proved the extent to which the British went against the Buganda agreement, for example they had failed to recognize the Kabaka of Buganda which was a central figure to the 1900 agreement.
13. It led to more political confusion in Buganda as Baganda became more unruly and lost their patience towards the colonial government.
14. The event surprised the Baganda; they will never forgive the colonial government for it.
15. Buganda still remained part and parcel of Uganda.

**Revision questions**

1. What led to the Kabaka crisis in Buganda of 1953?
2. What were the results of the Kabaka crisis?

**CHAPTER 20**

**SOCIAL AND ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENTS IN EAST AFRICA DURING THE COLONIAL PERIOD**

**COMMUNICATIONS SYTEMS IN THE BRITISH PROTECTORATE**

1. The communication systems included the railway lines, road networks, water transport, and telegraphic wires among others.
2. The Uganda railway line which was meant to benefit Uganda and Kenya started being constructed in 1896 from Mombasa and it was later extended to various parts of Kenya.
3. The railway line went through Voi, Nairobi, Nakuru and later Kisumu (Port Florence) then to Uganda.
4. The Uganda extension went through Port Bell and Namasangali to other major towns like Jinja, Kampala among others.
5. Mail services, postal centres were developed in settlers’ areas.
6. The railway lines were connected by feeder roads to supply goods to be transported.
7. Harbour at Mombasa was developed because of feeder roads connection. It was modernized to meet the standard of handling imports and exports.
8. Steamer services on Lake Victoria were also established to boost trade. There were major ports like Kisumu, Jinja, Port Bell, Entebbe were established.
9. The communication lines in the British protectorate linked very well Kenya Highland where the White settlers mainly settled.
10. Kenya had the best internal and international communication services in the British Protectorate by 1930.

**THE UGANDA RAILWAY**

**REASONS FOR THE CONSTRUCTION OF THE UGANDA RAILWAY**

1. The construction of the Uganda railway started way back in 1896 at Mombasa.
2. The Indian coolies provided labour.
3. Generally the Uganda railway was the railway line constructed from Mombasa through Kisumu then to Kampala and other Ugandan areas.
4. It was called the Uganda railway because though it passed through Kenya the aim of the British in constructing this railway was to tap and exploit Ugandan resources.
5. The need to facilitate British imperialism into Uganda and Kenya also led to the construction of this railway.
6. It was constructed to provide cheap and quick transport from the coast of East Africa into Uganda.
7. The need to transport colonial agents, military personnel and other British officials.
8. It was to facilitate the ending of slave trade as with improving transport, slaves would be rendered partly useless.
9. The need to develop commercial activities in East Africa, that is to say trade between the two countries of Kenya and Uganda was yet another reason for the construction of the railway.
10. It was constructed because of the need to develop cash crop growing especially cotton, coffee, tobacco and others.
11. It was constructed to fulfill the policy of effective occupation as clearly put by the Berlin conference of 1884 - 1885.
12. It was constructed to eliminate the pending interest of other powers into Uganda especially the Sudanese or Khartoumers and probably the Egyptians.
13. It was constructed to make Uganda as a British colony more self-reliant. The need to maximally exploit Uganda’s resources for British purposes therefore led to its construction.
14. The Imperial British East African Company (IBEACo) that pestered the British administration to start such ventures contributed to the construction of this railway.

**EXTENSION OF THE UGANDA RAILWAY FROM MOMBASA IN KENYA TO PAKWACH IN UGANDA**

1. The construction of the Uganda railway started on 30th May 1896 from Mombasa in Kenya under the supervision of Engineer George Whitehouse.
2. It then dragged on because the Africans were not willing to work on the project.
3. In 1898, the railway line was extended to Voi from Mombasa.
4. In June 1899, the line was extended to Nairobi to ease the movement of administrators. At Nairobi, a store was established to keep equipments.
5. In December 1900, the railway line reached Nakuru from where it became a little bit difficult to cross the Eastern rift valley.
6. In 1901, the railway line reached Port Florence (Kisumu) from Nakuru. A few weeks later the line to Uganda was opened.
7. In 1901, the railway line reached Port bell.
8. In 1912, the railway line was extended to Namasangali. This was done to encourage cotton growing and transportation of livestock.
9. The railway line was extended to Jinja in 1928 to encourage transportation of heavy goods like coffee and cotton to Jinja factories.
10. The line reached Kampala from Jinja in 1931 to help in the transportation of commodities to Jinja factories.
11. Meanwhile in 1928, the railway line was extended to Tororo to reduce congestion at Port Bell.
12. The railway line was extended to Mbale in from Tororo in 1928 to fetch coffee.
13. In1929, the extension reached Soroti to encourage cotton growing and to get animal products like meat, hides and skins.
14. In 1932, Kasese line proceeded from Kampala and it finally reached there in 1956 to transport copper and cotton to Jinja factories.
15. In 1965, the railway line extended to Pakwach through Mbale, Soroti, Lira and Gulu. It was extended to transport tobacco and cotton to Jinja factories.

**PROBLEMS ENCOUNTERED DURING THE CONSTRUCTION OF UGANDA RAILWAY**

1. Wild animals that threatened human life, for example at Tsavo.
2. Tropical diseases like malaria and sleeping sickness among others claimed very many lives of the constructors.
3. Harsh climatic conditions, for example heavy rains disrupted the construction in some cases.
4. Lack of enough manpower to handle construction work was a very big problem.
5. Physical features like swamps, rivers and lakes acted as barriers and provided need for more labour.
6. Lack of proper accommodation for the workers posed yet another big problem to the railway construction.
7. Hostile tribes like the Masai that constantly raided the constructors, and from the Nandi who looted the construction materials and cut off the telegraphic wires to make ornaments.
8. Distance from their home to East Africa was great hence delaying the arrival of the materials for construction.
9. Lack of enough financial assistance to carry on the construction work.
10. Difficulty in transport and communication also became a big problem during the construction work.
11. Language barrier hence poor communication still remained a great problem.
12. Indian coolies at times never cooperated. They wasted materials and proved to be very expensive.
13. There was shortage of water and food for the workers.
14. There was low technology because all the work was done manually. This delayed the construction work.
15. Debate at home in the British parliament delayed the construction of the railway. It was an issue which was seriously debated upon in the British parliament for long.
16. There was also lack of storage facilities in the interior for the railway materials from Europe.

**Note that** most of the problems faced by the missionaries and colonialists also affected constructors of the Uganda railway.

**EFFECTS OF THE CONSTRUCTION OF UGANDA RAILWAY**

1. Transport was made easier and effective for the both the Africans and colonial administrators in their East African territories.
2. Employment opportunities were generated by the constructors during construction work and even after the construction.
3. Ugandan resources were fully exploited by the British
4. Development of towns, especially those the railway line had passed through like Kisumu, Nairobi among others.
5. Cash crop growing was developed in Uganda. This provided a basis for income generation for the people of Uganda, hence improving their economic status.
6. Some of the Indian coolies, who constructed the Uganda railway remained behind afterwards, and established business in Kenya.
7. Slave trade was easily stopped because the claimed that they were being used as transporters could no longer hold water.
8. It led to loss of land to those African communities that occupied the areas where the railway line had passed, for example the Nandi. No wonder they put a stiff resistance against the railway construction.
9. Development of road transport as feeder roads developed to link up railway stations was yet another effect, for example from 1905 to 1910 Sir Hesketh Bell constructed such roads.
10. It led to the influx or coming of more Asians into East Africa as traders and farmers, for example Alindina Visram.
11. Transportation costs were tremendously reduced as the railway transport proved too cheap.
12. The British colonial administration was facilitated a great deal.
13. After its construction, the hut tax was introduced by the British into Ugandan.
14. Loss of lives, for example the Nandi leader Orkoyoit was killed because he wanted to resist the railway line from passing in his area.
15. Many Europeans came into Uganda and East Africa as well due to cheap transport.
16. Christianity was easily spread into East Africa due to easy transport.
17. Agricultural development was realized into East Africa.

**Revision questions**

1. Why was the Uganda railway constructed?
2. What were the problems encountered during the construction of the Uganda railway?
3. Describe the stages in the construction of the Uganda railway.
4. What were the effects of the construction of Uganda railway?

**THE DEVELOPMENT OF AGRICULTURE IN EAST AFRICA 1900-1945**

**AGRICULTURAL DEVELOPMENT IN UGANDA DURING THE COLONIAL PERIOD**

1. In the first ten years of the protectorate government, the economy of Uganda depended on the British government’s support as far as funding was concern.
2. The major export before the introduction of a number of crops was ivory.
3. A number of cash crops were later introduced in Uganda under the strong support of the Governor Sir Hesketh Bell and Mr. Simpson, the director of agriculture from 1915 to 1929. In 1904 K.E Borup introduced cotton.
4. Sir Apollo Kaggwa, Buganda’s prime minister also promoted cotton growing in Buganda by making people know the value of cotton in comparison to ivory.
5. The growing of cotton remained at the peasantry level up to 1914.
6. By 1914, cotton had become the most important export replacing ivory. It was earning about $ 52,000 per annum.
7. It was one of the most important cash crops grown in Buganda and Bugishu where Mr.F Spire, the provincial Commissioner in the then Eastern province emphasized its growing.
8. Other crops which were later grown in Uganda during the colonial period were rubber, sugar cane, groundnuts and simsim among others.
9. For the smooth movement of cash crops, the Governor Sir Hesketh Bell encouraged the construction of roads.
10. Coffee grown by the few white settlers proved to be very successful but it was grown majorly in Buganda. Bugishu areas started growing Arabica coffee after World War I.
11. Hesketh also encouraged the importation of bicycles, and vehicles to ease movements and transport.
12. Bell also constructed the railway lines linking Kampala, Port Bell, Namasangali and Jinja in 1912.
13. The colonial government also encouraged many Asians to set up retail and wholesale business in Uganda.
14. The Asians became the main Exporters and Importers in Uganda.
15. The Asians also established factories, ginneries, and workshops.
16. A number of towns and trading centres developed near the colonial Headquarters and along communication lines.
17. The colonial government discouraged the whites’ coming into Uganda.
18. Uganda therefore developed as peasantry economy.
19. It was not until 1940 when industrialization in processing and manufacturing sectors was set up.
20. There was no development of animal rearing in Uganda during the colonial period.
21. For agriculture to develop, schools set were supposed to have school farms where the students could carry out practical farming.

**WHY UGANDA FAILED TO DEVELOP AS SETTLERS’ COLONY AND WHY SETTLERS’ FARMING FAILED IN UGANDA**

1. Uganda had not been explored fully by the Europeans to find out its conduciveness for the white settlement.
2. The fear of other Europeans because of the source of the Nile River being in Uganda. they thought that war would break out among the European powers to control the Nile river source, Uganda.
3. After the Buganda agreement, there was no more land available for the whites. Land was divided into Mailo land and crown land and nothing remained.
4. Buganda Mailo land owners charged high costs for their land and hence the Europeans found it too expensive.
5. Suitable areas for white settlement in Uganda were inaccessible. It was not easy to get to places like Kigezi, Ankole and Tooro among others. They were very far and remote.
6. After the success of cotton growing in Uganda, the governor emphasized that Uganda should be a black man’s country
7. Uganda never had a Sea route, hence it was notvery attractive and strategically unimportant.
8. In 1908, the colonial government restricted buying of land by Europeans.
9. Wrong choices of crops made by Europeans in Uganda, for example Arabic coffee had no internal demand or market in Uganda.
10. Most of the crops the settler grew had limited internal demand or even no market at all in Uganda, for example Rubber.
11. The location of Uganda geographically made production and transport costs very high.
12. Lack of vibrant leaders in Uganda’s case like the case was for Lord Delamare in Kenya.

**ROLE OF ALLINDINA VISRAM IN THE ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT OF UGANDA**

1. Alindina Visram was an Indian born in 1863 in India.
2. He came to Uganda during the construction of the Uganda railway. He was therefore one of those who emerged after the construction of the Uganda railway.
3. Later Alindina Visram started his own business at the coast of East Africa in Zanzibar as early as 1870.
4. He also participated in the Long distance trade in East Africa.
5. Alindina Visram later moved into the interior of East Africa and opened up business in Bagamoyo and with time also in Kampala.
6. After the construction of the Uganda railway, Visram set up commercial centres along the railway line.
7. He was the most enterprising Indian businessman of that period.
8. Alindina Visram gave employment to many Africans to do business for him in Kampala and Jinja.
9. He started his trade in ivory and he became the major exporter of ivory in Uganda.
10. He organised trade caravans between Uganda and the coast of East Africa.
11. Visram bought produce from African farmers, for example he bought cotton, coffee and tobacco among others for export.
12. He also built cotton ginneries in Uganda especially in Kampala to process cotton.
13. Alindina Visram acquired a lot of wealth and opened up workshops, sawmills, and soda factories in Uganda.
14. He opened up oil mines and had oil establishment plants.
15. He lent out money to other African and Indian traders in East Africa to allow them participate in business.
16. It was Alindina Visram who opened up the first powerful shop in Kampala.
17. He was generous and he gave out donations to religious organizations.
18. Alindina Visram’s influence in Uganda earned him a lot of respect and many streets in Kampala and Jinja were named after him.
19. Visram died a powerful man in 1916.

**ROLE OF SIR HESKETH BELL IN THE HISTORY OF UGANDA**

1. Sir Hesketh Bell was the first special commissioner of the protectorate government in Uganda in 1905.
2. He was made the first Governor of the colonial government in Uganda in 1907.
3. As a governor, Sir Hesketh Bell developed small scale farming in Uganda.
4. It was Hesketh Bell who improved on cotton growing in Uganda as a cash crop.
5. In 1908, he passed the Uganda cotton law which implemented cotton growing scheme.
6. Bell contributed to the development of textile industries in Britain that exported cloth to the Africans.
7. Hesketh Bell established cotton ginneries to improve the quality of cotton.
8. He encouraged the growing of other crops such as rubber, sugar cane, groundnuts and simsim.
9. It was Sir Hesketh Bell who encouraged the growing of Robusta coffee and Arabica coffee in Buganda and Bugishu respectively.
10. Bell improved on transport and communication systems in Uganda for the smooth movement of cash crops. Railway lines and roads were constructed. By 1912, Uganda had the best road networks in East Africa.
11. He extended the railway line between Jinja, Kampala, and Port Bell and to the Eastern part of Uganda. This was done to develop cash crop growing like coffee and cotton.
12. He also encouraged the importation of vehicles and bicycles to ease transportation of agricultural produce.
13. Hesketh Bell contributed to the development of towns, trading centres especially along the communication and transport lines in Uganda.
14. He is remembered for his role of increasing on trading activities in various parts of Uganda. Many traders from outside were attracted to Uganda.
15. When there was an outbreak of Tse tse flies around the shores of Lake Victoria, Bell transferred all the people from those areas in 1907.
16. It was Hesketh Bell who introduced the Hut and Gun tax. He was able to raise a lot of revenue from them.
17. Sir Charles Eliot had suggested that white settlement should be encouraged in Uganda but Sir Hesketh Bell rejected that idea, hence saving Uganda from white settlement and from developing as settlers’ colony.

**Revision questions**

* + 1. Describe the development of agriculture in Uganda during the colonial time.
    2. Why did settler farming fail in Uganda?
    3. Why didn’t Uganda develop as settlers’ colony?
    4. What role did the following play in the economic development of Uganda?

a) Alindina Visram b) Sir Hesketh Bell.

**AGRICULTURAL DEVELOPMENT IN TANGANYIKA DURING COLONIAL PERIOD**

1. Agricultural practices in Tanganyika were done by both Africans and Europeans.
2. Cotton growing was carried out around Rufigi and it was prospering.
3. The German white settlers grew cotton in Usukuma province and they got a lot of money from it.
4. The Germans white settlers were also able to grow cotton in the coastal areas with the assistance of labour got from the Africans.
5. The growing of coffee was first done by the German settlers but later the Africans picked interest in growing. They grew it around the areas of Bukoba and Kilimanjaro.
6. In Bukoba areas, the Africans grew Robusta coffee while in Kilimanjaro areas they grew Arabica coffee.
7. The Natives in Tanganyika formed an association to promote coffee growing in Chagga land and Kilimanjaro districts, for example Kilimanjaro Native Association.
8. The growing of coffee was encouraged the more after World War I. This helped in the raising of revenue to restructure Tanganyika.
9. The growing of rubber was experimented in the Districts of Tanga and Morogoro.
10. Rubber was more profitable and the Africans were also encouraged to collect wild rubber from the forests from wild rubber trees.
11. Large scale rubber plantations and production were later developed by the German government by 1912.
12. Sisal production increased especially in the coastal areas. The demand for sisal had also increased. More sisal farms developed around Morogoro and Tabora.
13. New cash crops like tea and sugar cane were introduced after 1930.
14. Groundnuts were also grown with time.
15. In the hills of Kilimanjaro, wheat growing was also tried.

**EFFECTS OF CASH CROP GROWING IN TANGANYIKA**

1. Africans who participated in cash crop growing got a lot of money and became rich. In the process they started enjoying better.
2. Some Africans also got jobs as they supplied labour in the white farms. They also got a lot of money.
3. Tanganyika was linked to western capitalism as a result of cash crop growing.
4. While in some cases the Africans were forced to provide labour to the German farms. This later sparked off wars like the Maji Maji rebellion.
5. There was a serious decline in food crop production as Africans concentrated in cash crop growing to get money. Famine therefore broke out.
6. Africans were able to form Associations to help market their crops, for example Kilimanjaro Native Association.
7. Some of the farmers’ Associations were changed into Political parties to demand for independence.
8. The white settlers grabbed African land to open up plantations and Africans were left landless.
9. Infrastructural development took place, for example the railway lines were constructed to promote production of raw materials.
10. The exportation of agricultural produce also increased in Tanganyika.
11. Processing industries were established to process agricultural produce.
12. Cash crop production led to the coming of more Europeans into Tanganyika to participate in their growing.

**Revision questions**

1. Describe the development of agriculture in Tanganyika during the colonial period.
2. What were the effects of cash crop growing upon the people of Tanganyika?

**AGRICULTURAL DEVELOPMENT IN KENYA (1900-1945)**

1. Agriculture in Kenya was developed by the white settlers and they developed it majorly in the Kenya highland.
2. It was Lord Delamare, a very active progressive farmer who supported the development of agriculture in Kenya, for example he gave loans to farmers to develop farming.
3. The first crop production to be encouraged was potato growing.
4. There was the introduction of wheat growing in the areas of Njoro.
5. In 1908 Delamare established wheat milling company to promote wheat growing.
6. In addition, other crops like tea, coffee and maize were grown.
7. There was the experimentation of animal rearing, for example pigs, sheep, and cattle were imported for commercial rearing but it failed because of East coast fever, an animal disease.
8. To improve on animal farming and their resistance, Delamare tried cross breeding of the exotic cattle and local ones.
9. The growing of sisal was tried in 1904 in Thika areas and it was successful.
10. At the coast of Kenya, rubber growing was tried and it picked up.
11. In Kericho and Limuru, tea growing was introduced.
12. There was introduction of the growing of vegetables like cabbages, tomatoes, carrots and lettuce among others.
13. Maize production on a large scale was encouraged among the Africans. In 1920 the colonial government encouraged its production.
14. Cotton production was developed in Nyanza province in 1906.
15. The Christian missionaries introduced coffee growing in 1908.
16. Fruits were also grown in the main hills around.
17. In the highland of Kenya, pyrethrum growing was developed in 1it was majorly the Africans who provided cheap labour.
18. Land was also grabbed from among the Africans especially among the Masai and Nandi to promote and develop agriculture.

**WHY KENYA DEVELOPED AS A WHITE SETTLERS’ COLONY**

1. From 1890’s onwards the number of European settlers in Kenya increased.
2. The settlers came from South Africa, Austria, New Zealand and other places. Among them was a recognized settler, Lord Delamare.
3. The settlers introduced large plantations into Kenya such that at the end Kenya developed   
   into a settler colony in East Africa.

Such a development resulted from:

1. First and foremost, the number of Europeans had already tremendously or greatly increased in Kenya, hence it was easier to set up a settlers’ colony in Kenya.
2. Reports made by earlier missionaries and explorers exposed the economic potentials in Kenya, hence it had to be developed into a settlers’ colony.
3. Africans in Kenya never took seriously the courage to invest heavily in commercial farming. This therefore greatly encouraged the Europeans to establish a settlers’ colony in Kenya.
4. The wonderful climatic conditions in Kenya more especially around the Kenyan highland that was famous for their cool climate attracted white settlers.
5. In Kenya, unlike in Uganda there were no serious centralized states that could heavily resist the proposal of a settlers’ colony.
6. In areas like Kenya High lands, there were very few people living there, hence this facilitated the settlement of the whites.
7. The inspiration and courage given to the Europeans by administrators like Charles Elliot who encouraged more whites to come to Kenya in big number.
8. Africans in Kenya gave more attention to pastoralism hence Kenya was more viable and unexploited in terms of plantation fanning hence leading to the establishment of settlers’ colony.
9. The strategic importance of Kenya than, say Uganda could not be neglected. Kenya had Sea ports like Mombasa suitable for ship landing.
10. The declaration by the Devonshire white paper that gave Europeans an upper hand in Kenya’s politics and economy made Kenya to develop as settlers’ colony.
11. The construction of the Uganda railway that passed through Kenya provided cheap transport.
12. Many Kenyan tribes were nomadic and hence this availed more land opportunities for European settlers.
13. Discovery of minerals else where in Africa. This was true for South Africa where minerals were discovered between 1867 and 1889. It made settlers hoped for such mineral opportunities in Kenya, hence the establishment of settlers’ colony.
14. Availability of cheap labour that would be got from the Kenyans encouraged a settlers’ colony in Kenya.
15. The changing of Kenya’s capital from Mombasa to Nairobi in 1907 increased the impetus interest for European activities within Kenya, hence the establishment of settlers’ colony with in Kenya.
16. Land was being sold very cheaply in Kenya and it became very easy for the white settlers to acquire it.

**CHALLENGES AND PROBLEMS FACED BY THE WHITE SETTLERS IN KENYA**

1. Lack of capital to fully develop plantation farming in Kenya.
2. Activities and events in Europe, for example the European economic depression or economic decay that befell Europe immediately after World War I limited the scope of European investment.
3. Some of Kenyan land was infertile apart from the Highland areas; hence this required use of manures which were very expensive.
4. Conflicts over land from the Africans also discouraged the whites from acquiring land in Kenya.
5. The Highland areas too required heavy machines to prepare and, thus the farming became expensive.
6. There was poor road network that led to difficulty in transportation of agricultural out put and produce.
7. It was not easy to establish which crops to be grown; hence a lot of resources were spent on experimentation.
8. A number of crops grown by the settlers needed too much area of land; take the case of rubber and tea. Therefore, it was not easy to acquire the large tracks of land needed by such crops.
9. Constant raids from the Kenyan natives over basic necessities like food discouraged the white settlers.
10. Tropical diseases affected the settlers greatly. Many lost their lives while in Kenya; as a result others were discouraged.
11. Language barrier was yet another problem that the white settlers suffered from in Kenya.
12. Pests and diseases of crops like rust that affected yields of wheat affected the white settlers’ farming.

**IMPORTANCE OF LORD DELAMARE IN THE ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT OF KENYA**

1. Lord Delamare’s real name was Hugh Cholmondeley.
2. He was a typical aristocrat, a man from the highest class, a radical and hot tempered.
3. Lord Delamare first came to Kenya on a hunting expedition in 1897 and returned in 1903.
4. He was attracted to Kenya because of its potential or wealth and it was very conducive for white settlement.
5. Lord Delamare is believed to have come from South Africa.
6. He became interested in making Kenya white settlers colony. He was therefore white settlers’ product.
7. Lord Delamare later became influential and a spokesman for the white settlers.
8. The white settlers under the influence of Lord Delamare formed an association called Planters and farmers association to promote agriculture in Kenya.
9. Delamare got plenty of land at Njoro and around Lake Elementieta for the white settlement farming.
10. It was Lord Delamare who experimented wheat farming in Kenya for the first time.
11. Through research, Lord Delamare controlled the “rust” disease which affected wheat farming.
12. It was Lord Delamare who formed Unga Limited to start milling wheat in Kenya.
13. He also carried out experiments on commercial cattle keeping in Kenya.
14. Lord Delamare carried out cross breeding for exotic and local cattle to increase their resistance against tropical diseases.
15. In 1923 Lord Delamare introduced diary farming in Kenya for the production of milk for sale.
16. He was instrumental in the importation of pigs, sheep and more cattle but the projects did not take off due to the outbreak of East coast fever.
17. Lord Delamare introduced many cash crops in Kenya, for example tea, maize, sisal and coffee among others.
18. He offered loans to other farmers to grow tea and sisal.
19. Lord Delamare convinced the colonial government to force Africans to offer labour in white farms.
20. It was Lord Delamare who excluded the Asians from settling in Kenya highlands.
21. Lord Delamare introduced law called the “Master-servants ordinance” of 1906 where the whites acted as masters and Africans as slaves.
22. The ordinance made the African interests inferior to those of the Europeans.
23. Lord Delamare was very active in settler politics and he led the European settlers’ delegation to the Devonshire discussion that led to the signing of the 1923 Devonshire white paper.
24. Lord Delamare provided good leadership to all the settlers in Kenya until the signing of the Devonshire White Paper in 1923.
25. He died in 1931 during the economic depression having played a very important role in agricultural development in Kenya.
26. However, Lord Delamare is remembered as the father of modern farming in Kenya.

**EFFECTS OF WHITE SETTLEMENTAND WHITE FARMING IN KENYA**

1. The effects were both positive and negative.
2. Others were political, social and economic in nature.
3. Better roads were constructed hence improving communication in Kenya.
4. Modern farming methods were introduced into Kenya by the white settlers.
5. There was improvement in science and technology within Kenya.
6. Commercial farming was introduced in Kenya.
7. Africans lost their most valuable lands to the white settlers.
8. It led to discovery of minerals by the Europeans, for example in 1931; gold was discovered at Kakamega province.
9. Kenyans were able to transform themselves from subsistence farming to large scale farming.
10. Africans got revenue farming which increased their standards of living.
11. Animals of high breed were introduced into Kenya by the white settlers, for example exotic sheep and cows.
12. More land was put into utilization hence this improved and increased Agricultural out put.
13. The Economy of Kenya landed entirely into the hands of the Europeans.
14. The value of land in Kenya greatly increased as they were highly demanded for farming.
15. The colonial government was able to tighten its control over Kenya with the money generated from agriculture.
16. It resulted into forced labour and other related issues in Kenya which later led to the Mau-Mau rebellion.
17. It encouraged more Europeans to come into Kenya.
18. As more whites came, conflicts arose between Europeans and Asians in Kenya.
19. Social services like health centres and schools were constructed in Kenya.
20. Africans were enslaved by the Europeans in their farms, homesteads and so on.
21. Some Africans got gainful jobs within the British government and European farms.
22. Kenya became industrialized as a number of industries sprang up to process agricultural products.
23. It fostered the growth of nationalism in Kenya as the Kenyans saw their country landing into the hands of Europeans.

**Revision questions**

1. Describe the development of agriculture in Kenya during the colonial period.
2. Why was Kenya developed into a white settler colony?
3. What challenges did the white settlers face in Kenya?
4. Describe the significance of Lord Delamare in the economic development of Kenya.
5. Of what impact was the introduction of white settlement in Kenya?
6. What were the effects of white farming in Kenya?

**THE DEVELOPMENT OF EDUCATION IN UGANDA**

**HOW EDUCATION WAS DEVELOPED IN UGANDA DURING THE COLONIAL PERIOD**

1. Education is the process by which mankind prepares his members for life in a society. It is the imparting of knowledge, skills and values to an individual.
2. It can be formal, informal and non formal. Education is carried out by the parents, teachers, peer groups and the general public.
3. Education is one of the most important aspects of human resource development and national development politically, economically and socially.
4. In Uganda it began in the hands of the Christian missionaries as formal education where they built schools to cater for the children of their converts.
5. The Christian missionaries had the major aim of preaching the word of God.
6. Schools were built alongside churches.
7. In their approach, the missionaries mainly taught the Africans literacy and numbers. They were basically called 3Rs, that is to say Reading, Writing and Arithmetic.
8. Those who acquired the 3Rs would be secretaries, interpreters for the colonialists and catechists.
9. The major purpose of formal education was to create literate class that would assist in the implementation of colonial policies.
10. Formal education was carried out along side informal education which was already in place.
11. They also encouraged the teaching of agriculture where the Africans were taught farming practices.
12. From 1902 the Christian missionaries started constructing elementary schools.
13. In 1902, Mill Hill missionaries built a school at Namilyango and also built another one on Mengo Hill and named it Mengo School.
14. In 1906 ,yet another school was built on Budo hill and named Kings College Budo. It was meant for the children of the Chiefs and important families.
15. In 1906, St. Mary’s College Kisubi was constructed by the Catholic white Fathers.
16. Between 1903 and 1905 Gayazza high school and Mount St Mary’s Namagunga were constructed to cater for girls’ education.
17. By 1905 about 7,800 girls were already attending schools established by the Christian missionaries.
18. The girls’ education emphasized obedience, hand work and good manners.
19. Between 1908 and1910 schools were constructed in Busoga sub region, Bunyoro sub region and Ankole sub region.
20. These schools were Ntare School, Mary Hill School, and Kiira College Butiiki among others.
21. As time went on English, Geography and Music were taught alongside religion and the 3Rs.
22. Schools were headed by reverends, nuns and priests.
23. In 1922 a technical school was opened at Makerere by the colonial government.
24. Two years later it was upgraded to train medical assistants.
25. Makerere was transformed into a training college under the Uganda first director of Education, Mr. Hussey.
26. Makerere started training professionals in 1926.
27. Teacher training colleges were also built towards 1930. This led to increase to more secondary schools as those to teach in them were being trained.
28. In 1948 a teacher training college was set up in Nyakasura (Fort Portal), Tooro sub region in the present day Kabarole District. It was later transferred to Ruharo and Ntare hill in Ankole sub region in present day Mbarara District. This teacher training college later became a National Teacher Training College.
29. The number of secondary schools had reached 23 by 1955.
30. Those of primary schools went up to 72 by 1939.
31. In 1935, the first Ugandan students sat for their Cambridge Certificate of Examinations.
32. In 1935, the enrolment of students in secondary schools had reached 225.
33. The enrolment of primary pupils had reached 1,355 by 1939
34. Makerere university was made a higher institution of learning in East Africa in 1937 by the Dela Warr Commission
35. Governor Sir Phillip Mitchell approved more grants to expand more primary and secondary education in the country. This was between 1940 and 1945.
36. A technical School also started on Makerere Hill in 1928 and in 1952 it was transferred to Kyambogo Hill and named Kampala Technical institute.

**REASONS WHY THE COLONIAL GOVERNMENT TOOK OVER THE DEVELOMENT OF EDUCATION IN UGANDA**

1. The colonial government became interested in controlling education in Uganda after 1820.
2. Before 1920, education in Uganda was in the hands of the missionaries.
3. In 1924 the colonial government set up the Phelps-Stokes commission to look into the system of education in East Africa.
4. It was after thorough research that it was discovered that the missionary education had a lot of loopholes. The government therefore took over because of the following reasons:
5. Missionary education emphasized majorly theoretical aspects than practical. They had ignored technical and industrial education in their curriculum.
6. The missionaries also ignored animal husbandry and agriculture in the schools they set up.
7. There was need to train more Ugandans as farmers so as to produce raw materials for the colonial government.
8. The colonial government discovered that the missionaries could not handled education alone.
9. In the missionary schools especially in villages, they were too many and under staffed. They also had poor hygiene.
10. The missionaries lacked enough funds to provide adequate education.
11. The government wanted to prepare Africans for self rule.
12. Still they wanted to develop enough man power.
13. The colonial government also discovered that the missionary education was discriminatory. The schools were set according religious inclination.
14. The colonial government discovered the major role of education in economic development. They later took it up as an investment for human resource.
15. There was the rise of new leaders who were progressive in their approach, for example Mr. Hussey, Phillip Mitchell and Sir Andrew Cohen.
16. The Christian missionaries had not taken initiative to expand higher education so the government took it upon themselves to expand higher education.
17. In the recommendation of Dela Warr, the government was to take over the control of education in Uganda.
18. There was need for inspection of Mission schools. It was discovered that the government had no direct involvement in education and therefore there was need to establish a Department of Education to guide the schools.
19. From 1920 the government therefore started financing the schools.
20. The first Director of education by the name of Eric Hussey was appointed in 1924. This was the first and most important step in the direct control of education in Uganda.

**Revision questions**

1. Describe the development of formal education in Uganda during the colonial period.
2. Why did the government become interested in controlling education in Uganda after 1920?

**CHAPTER 21**

**EAST AFRICA AND WORLD WARS (1914-1945)**

**THE FIRST WORLD WAR (1914-1918)**

**WHY EAST AFRICA GOT INVOLVED IN THE FIRST WORLD WAR**

1. The war broke out on 28th July 1914.
2. The war was fought between Britain, France, Russia, Serbia and all their supporters against German, Austria Hungary and all her supporters.
3. It was no doubt purely European war but because Germany and Britain had their colonies in East Africa, the war indirectly involved East Africans
4. East Africa became involved due to extended conflicts and suspicion of its colonial masters.
5. Since the King’s African Riffle was a colonial force it’s then no wonder it had to fight for its colonial masters.
6. The Germans deliberately provoked British Colonies with the aim of diverting British resources.
7. East Africa was strategically important and as such, it would help the British to protect their colonial interests in the Far East because of the war which was going on in North Africa and Middle East.
8. Both Germany and Britain had recruited the Africans in their armies.
9. East Africa got involved due to mistrust since the German colonies were just near to British colonies.
10. Some fighters from East Africa wanted to get military exposure and also to Adventure and know what was in Europe.
11. Britain and Germany lacked enough troops to fight on their sides hence involved East Africans.
12. East Africa wanted to assist her colonial masters who were directly involved in the war.
13. Poor East Africans were involved in this war out of ignorance. They never knew what the war was about but joined in blindly.
14. The East African people were strong enough to carry ammunitions, supplies like food and so on, hence their involvement was inevitable.
15. Even before the beginning of the war, several East African people were in their respective colonial forces, hence their participation was expected.
16. It must be noted that East Africans fully got involved in this war and actually did the following: They physically fought in the war, they supplied food to the forces, they carried supplies like food, they carried the wounded soldiers, they drove heavy tanks during the war, they carried very big guns because they were strong and other East Africans prepared food for the army.

**HOW EAST AFRICA GOT INVOLVED IN THE FIRST WORLD WAR**

1. World War I was fought beginning on the 28th, July 1914.
2. It was the first major war that involved almost the whole world.
3. The war was fought between Britain, France, Russia, Serbia and all their supporters against German, Austria Hungary and all her supporters.
4. It appeared purely European war but because Germany and Britain had their colonies in East Africa, the war indirectly involved East Africans.
5. East Africa therefore joined to protect the interest of their colonial masters, Britain for the case of Uganda and Kenya, then Germany for the case of Tanganyika.
6. Both Germany and Britain had recruited the Africans in their armies.
7. The Germans used about 2750 soldiers in Tanganyika.
8. But Britain on the other had more forces in East Africa than the Germans.
9. In East Africa, the German forces were under the command of Lettow Von Vorbeck who attacked the British railway to weaken them.
10. Britain also responded by attacking the German soldiers at Tanga Port.
11. At the beginning of the war, the Germans defeated the British.
12. To counter the Germans, the British later brought some soldiers from South Africa, India, Rhodesia and Malawi formerly Nyasaland under the command of General Smuts.
13. They also hired the Belgian forces to attack the German forces in Tabora.
14. With these forces, Britain started repulsing and defeating the German forces. They pushed them as far as Kilimanjaro Mountains.
15. Towards 1918, the German forces were pushed towards the southern part of Mozambique.
16. By the end of 1918, Germany was finally defeated in East Africa. Peace finally returned in East Africa.

**EFFECTS OF WORLD WAR I UPON THE PEOPLE OF EAST AFRICA**

1. It led to economic decay in East Africa.
2. It also led to rise of nationalism among the East African people.
3. The East Africans who participated in the war learnt to be more militarism.
4. It led to several deaths of East Africans.
5. Germany lost her control over Tanganyika.
6. It led to creation of ex-African fighters or ex-service men.
7. African got employment opportunities during the war, for example they worked as cooks, and porters.
8. It made the Europeans who participated to lose their superiority complex over the Africans. The Africans had seen Europeans cry, die and hence they knew that they were just like any other human being on earth. They also discovered that in Europe there were beggars and those severely hit by poverty.
9. It created some unity among the East African people against the whites.
10. The German defeat forced her to quickly surrender her colonies to the League of Nations, a newly formed world body to maintain world peace.
11. Britain took over Tanganyika in 1920 to control it on behalf of the League of Nations.
12. Indirect rule was introduced in Tanganyika by the British.
13. Many people were wounded and made disabled.
14. It led to economic depression (decline) of 1930’s in Europe that affected the East Africa people.
15. The East African attitude towards the whites changed greatly. They never saw the need to respect them any longer.
16. The East Africans who were involved in the war leant new skills of fighting.
17. Famine and starvation due to general decline in agricultural production broke out.
18. Exploitation of East African resources intensified as European powers wanted to rebuild their economies.
19. Ranks and even medals were awarded to the East Africans which even today several old men are proud of.
20. Critical thinking and evolution of new ideas was realized in East Africans.
21. European diseases like plague and meningitis were spread by the East Africans who were involved in the war.

**Revision questions**

1. Why was East Africa involved in World War I?
2. How did East Africa get involved in World War I?
3. How did the war affect the people of East Africa?

**THE SECOND WORLD WAR**

**WHY AND HOW EAST AFRICA WAS INVOLVED**

1. World war II started in 1939 and ended in 1945.
2. It occurred in Europe among Germany, Italy, and their friends against Britain, France, Russia, USA and their friends.
3. Once again East Africa was unable to remain neutral in this war although this time there was no serious fighting in any of the three East African countries.

The reasons were:

1. East Africa was under one of the European warlords, Britain.
2. The Germans in East Africa supported Hitler, the war agitator, hence involvement of East Africa.
3. There was Britain in Uganda, Kenya, and Tanzania and her presence in East Africa made East Africa to get involved.
4. In the neighbouring countries of Somalia, Somalia, and Eritrea, there was Italy which was on the side of Germany against Britain.
5. Several soldiers of Kings Africa Riffles (KAR) were stationed on the Somali side.
6. Troops moved into Kenya and they were joined by others from Nigeria, Ghana and India.
7. East Africa also gave in large amount of money to meet the British war cost.
8. Italy attacked Britain in East Africa as one of the German friends.
9. Later when Japan joined the war on the side of Germany, Britain was forced to expand the number of her army, KAR in East Africa.
10. Thousands of East African soldiers went to India and Burma to fight on the side of Britain.
11. Others went as far as Madagascar.
12. The East African joined this war because of the old British and German conflicts.
13. The East Africans had a fear that East Africa will fall back under the German rule yet they hated the German rule.

**EFFECTS OF SECOND WAR UPON THE PEOPLE OF EAST AFRICA**

1. The war had both positive and negative effects.
2. The effects were also political, economic and social in nature.
3. The war disrupted internal and external trade.
4. It disrupted agricultural activities in East Africa leading to famine.
5. Many people lost their lives and many more were wounded.
6. African family system was distorted as many men left their homes to go and fight on the side on the colonial masters. Families remained without heads.
7. Nationalism developed in East Africa with many political parties being formed.
8. The Africans lost respect for the whites as they saw them cry, die and being defeated during the war.
9. In Kenya the Asians and the Indian shops were looted by the Africans because they hated them due to their privileged positions.
10. Labour shortage hit hard the European factories leading to low production of manufactured goods.
11. The Africans in Kenya were encouraged to grow cash crops for the first time.
12. The war veterans or ex-servicemen came back with venereal diseases and other Sexually Transmitted Diseases.
13. After the Second World War, Tanganyika became a trusteeship of the British under a UNO provision towards self rule.
14. It led to rise of militant African Nationalism like Mau Ma rebellion.
15. The war brought misery and suffering among the East African people.
16. The East African fighters met with other oppressed group from West Africa, and India. They shared their problems under colonial rule and discussed how to get independence.
17. The Second World War led to the formation of the United Nations Organization to maintain world peace and prevent any other war from breaking out in the World.
18. The Italians were defeated in East African region and this marked the end of their threats to East Africa.
19. Resettling of ex-service men became a problem because many of them had lost trace of their homes.
20. Britain was put under pressure by the UN to withdraw from East African countries.
21. The East African fighters learnt new fighting tactics which assisted them during the struggle for independence.
22. The Germans in East Africa who had threatened to fight the British were arrested and imprisoned.

**Revision question**

1. Why and how was East Africa involved in World War II?
2. How did the war affect the people of East Africa?

**CHAPTER 22**

**THE EAST AFRICAN FEDERATION OR CLOSER UNION OF EAST AFRICAN COUNTRIES**

**REASONS FOR THE EAST AFRICAN CLOSER UNION**

1. Federation involved bringing together all the three East African countries of Uganda, Kenya and Tanganyika into a unitary government.
2. It was an attempt aimed at merging all the East African countries into one state.
3. The earlier British Colonial leaders like Fredrick Lugard, Sir Harry Johnstone and Charles Eliot had recommended one administration of East African countries.
4. The idea therefore came up as early as 1896 during Lugard’s reign and it was bought by Sir Harry Johnstone in 1900.
5. Charles Eliot also supported the idea of a federation between 1900 and 1905 before he retired.
6. It was not until after the First World War that there was an official attempt to consider a possible union of the three East African countries.
7. The reasons for the move were political, social and economic in nature.
8. Uganda, Kenya and Tanganyika were jointly ruled by the British government. Britain wanted the three united for easy administration.
9. Because of the need for firm control over the source of the Nile River and control of the Nile valley up to Egypt.
10. After the First World War, the newly formed League of Nations handed over Tanganyika as a mandate to the British. This promoted the idea of a federation because East African countries were already all under one power.
11. Uganda was a landlocked country depending on Kenya and this status made Britain to think of a union to ease transport and communication in East Africa.
12. Makerere University before independence was considered “the University of East Africa” attended by intellectuals from all the three countries. This helped in the idea of bringing the three countries together intellectually.
13. Britain preferred united administration of her East African empire given the fact that she was the only colonial master in East Africa after World War I.
14. The three East African countries shared the same problems thus it would be wise to handle them as one territory.
15. The boundaries of the three East African countries were artificial and there would be much gain by sharing resources hence need for a federation.
16. Similar laws would also be used once integration was arrived at.
17. There would also be joint customs control, postal services, currencies, defense and agricultural research.
18. The capital and human resources would also be merged and this would avoid duplication of services.
19. There would be joint market and currencies for economic gain.
20. Unity and brotherhood among the East African people would also be achieved through East African federation.
21. The union would also make the East African countries that were affected by World War I recover quickly from the war effects because they had accumulated a lot of debt.
22. The First World War had seen the need for a federation in coordination and sharing resources so as to win the war. The idea therefore picked up after the war had ended.

**REASONS FOR THE FAILURE OF EAST AFRICAN FEDERATION**

1. The reasons for the failure of East African federation were both internal and external.
2. Uganda and Tanganyika strongly opposed the idea. They feared to be turned into white settlers’ colonies.
3. The Baganda in Uganda also feared that the federation would undermine their privileged position. They looked at the federation as an arrangement that would block their social and political progress.
4. The East African states all along wanted independence. They feared that if they went into a federation their quest for freedom would be shattered.
5. The Africans also feared the white domination over them incase the federation was formed.
6. There was yet another fear that Tanganyika would return to the Germans because there were still some few Germans in Tanganyika and they were still a very big threat.
7. The new British Governor in Tanganyika, Sir Donald Cameroon also opposed the idea greatly.
8. There was a fear that business in East Africa would be dominated by the White settlers if the federation was achieved.
9. At independence the federation would still be impossible because each of the three East African countries took different ideology. For example, Kenya took capitalist ideology while Tanganyika went in for socialist policy.
10. The Africans had calculated and found out that the idea would benefit the British government, so they rejected out rightly.
11. The Africans in Kenya discovered that the union would interfere with their representation in the Legislative council.
12. The idea of a federation had its origin from outside East Africa thus the Africans rejected it in totality.
13. Africans had already made drastic steps in influencing politics in their respective countries thus the union would be an interruption to their progress so far made.
14. Lord Delamare the major advocate for white settlers had passed away in 1931 and, therefore the idea lacked a figure head to follow it critically.
15. The bodies that had been put in place did not recommend that federation was practical in East Africa, for example the L.S Ormsby and Hilton Young Commissions.
16. The British government itself never wanted to put in danger its responsibility to the League of Nations as she was charged with responsibility of looking after East African territories.
17. East Africa was also hit by the economic depression of 1931, so she was looking for ways of recovering.
18. East African countries had different arrangement in leadership, Uganda was a protectorate, Kenya was a settler colony and Tanganyika was a mandated territory under the League of Nations.

**Revision question**

1. Why was there need for the closer union of the east African countries between 1900 and 1945?
2. Why was this attempt unsuccessful?

**CHAPTER 23**

**NATIONALISM IN EAST AFRICA**

**REASONS FOR THE RISE OF NATIONALISM AND POLITICAL PARTIES IN EAST AFRICA**

1. Nationalism simply refers to one’s love for his or her country.
2. It’s the desire for the freedom of one’s state against foreign rule.
3. It is one’s devotion and loyalty to his or her state.
4. Nationalism is that thinking that puts the consideration of one’s state to be above each and every thing.
5. It’s the consciousness of East Africans against European exploitation, oppression, and so on.
6. The factors for the rise of nationalism and political parties in East Africa were internal and external in nature.
7. The effects of World War I. It diluted the dignity of the Africans after being exposed to Europe. The whites were clearly known among the East Africans not to be superior as they appeared.
8. The formation of UNO after World War II that called for democracy.
9. The development of elite class like Julius Nyerere of Tanzania and Kenyatta of Kenya who thought of liberating East Africa from the whites.
10. The return of ex- service men from World War I and II, for example Jomo Kenyata. These had leant military tactics.
11. Development of large political parties, for example TANU for Tanganyika, KANU for Kenya also became a platform for agitating for independence, hence Nationalism.
12. The grabbing of African land by Europeans especially in Kenya and Tanzania led to the development of nationalism.
13. Influence of mass media like radios that called for unity also led to the development of nationalism in East Africa.
14. Rise of vibrant and foresighted men in East Africa like Apollo Milton Obote in Uganda and Julius Nyerere for Tanzania among others.
15. Influence of western Education to people like Nyerere, Jomo Kenyatta that changed the thinking and reasoning of East Africans.
16. Emergence of super powers like America after World War II that morally and financially supported nationalistic struggles in East Africa.
17. Development of cities like Kampala Nairobi, Mombasa, Kisumu which acted as collecting centres for East African people from where they discussed political issues.
18. The influence of missionary activities and preaching that enlightened the people of East Africa into thinking for freedom and liberty.
19. The attainment of independence by the Asian countries like India in1947, which gave support to East African countries.
20. Economic developments in East Africa, for example after the construction of the Uganda railway transport became easy for the Nationalists to mobilize people. Improved transport and communication therefore expedited the growth of African Nationalism
21. The foundation of trade unions that united the East African people, for example the Busoga Growers Association.
22. The Success of Algerian war of independence 1954 – 1962 acted as an inspirational factor.
23. Development of common language like Swahili for Kenyans and Tanzanians that led to unity.
24. Role of Mau-Mau movement of Kenya that awakened the Africans the more.
25. Ghana’s getting of independence in 1957 encouraged East Africans to also pressurize their colonial government to give them independence.
26. The success of Egyptian revolution of 1952. Thereafter, Egyptians gave moral support, for example their Radio Cairo was used by Jomo Kenyatta to attack colonial policies in Kenya.
27. Formation of OAU, which inspired different countries to get independence.
28. The oppressive colonial polices into East Africa, for example forced labour increased African struggle for independence.
29. Signing of 1941 Atlantic Charter by Roosevelt and Churchill that stressed the importance of self rule.
30. The 5th Pan African Congress organised at Manchester in 1955 acted as a platform for African struggle.
31. Role of the Cold War politics where Russia and America supported different countries to get independence with the hope that they will take on their political ideologies, that is to say socialism by Russian (USSR), and capitalism by USA.
32. Role of independent Churches which were religious organization formed by the Africans. They made the Africans aware of the whiteman’s exploitation.  
    **Note that** the factors for the development of East African nationalism are similar to those that led to the development of political parties in E Africa.

**THE ROLE OF SECOND WORLD WAR TO THE GROWTH OF MODERN NATIONALISM IN EAST AFRICA**

1. Nationalism refers to ones love for his country. It was the desire for East Africans to administer themselves thus it involved activities that aimed at gaining independence.
2. It also refers to the willingness, national unity, devotion and African determination for self rue.
3. Africans hated foreign rule in totality and they picked up arms against the foreign rule.
4. World War II contributed to growth of nationalism and later to East African independence both politically and socially.
5. There were so many East Africans who participated in World War II and when they came back, they were determined to demand for better conditions. These included people like General china of Kenya.
6. The Africans who participated in World War II learnt the European warfare, for example they learnt new military tactics and the use of guns.
7. The Second World War veterans became very violent to be controlled by the Europeans when they came back. They even formed political movements in their respective countries.
8. The UNO was formed after the Second World and it demanded for immediate decolonization of Africa, East Africa inclusive.
9. The war also exposed the Africans to western culture and civilization and this enabled the Africans to know how to deal with them.
10. The war also removed the African inferiority complex about the European superiority which was on the Africans for long. During the war, the Africans fought alongside the whites and they discovered the weaknesses of the whites.
11. The war led to the coming up of new anti-colonial super powers like USA and former USSR that decampaigned colonialism.
12. World War II encouraged the formation of political parties which increased the need for independence.
13. After World War II trade unions were formed. These demanded for better conditions of workers.
14. The Second World War also led to the formation of Pan African National Congress after a meeting which was held in Manchester where the Africans agreed on the slogan “SELF RULE NOW”.
15. The granting of independence to India and Pakistan in 1947 spread to East Africa in the 1950s when the war veterans demanded for independence hence a contribution of Second World War.
16. The getting of independence by Ghana in 1957 under Kwame Nkrumah increased East African Nationalism.
17. The return of the educated class like Jomo Kenyatta and Julius Nyerere from abroad increased the quest for independence. They had interacted with others from other countries during World War II and shared ways of attaining independence.

**Revision question**

How did the Second World War contribute to the growth of modern Nationalism in East Africa?

**NATIONAL1SM IN UGANDA**

**REASONS FOR DELAYED NATIONALISM IN UGANDA**

1. Nationalism refers to ones love for his country, it was the desire for East Africans to administer themselves thus it involved activities that aimed at gaining independence.
2. Nationalism refers to ones love for his country, it was the desire for East Africans to administer themselves thus it involved activities that aimed at gaining independence.
3. The pace of development of nationalism was indeed too slow and this was due to a number of factors namely:
4. Effects of colonialism where the British used their indirect rule that was characterized by   
   divide and rule, tribes were kept completely apart, hence delaying the development of   
   nationalism. For example during the development of nationalism, Ugandans looked at Buganda with envy or jealousy due to divide and rule where Buganda was used as Kings and chiefs over other areas.
5. Religious divisionism that characterized the social and political set up of Uganda made people too disunited.
6. Absence of a common language as the case was in Kenya, where Swahili was and it tried to unite the Kenyans but such was not in Uganda.
7. The absence or lack of common big problems against British rule in Uganda. In other East African nations like Kenya, the colonialists opened large plantations; the white settlers removed land from people. Such issues were non existent in Uganda; hence people were not fully united.
8. British policy of favouring Buganda in the colonial days made the whole of Uganda turn against Buganda other than looking at nationalism at large.
9. The British colonialists in Uganda tended to offer several facilities like schools, roads, hospitals that blind folded Ugandans in the eyes of colonialism, hence delayed nationalism.
10. Uganda lacked fully determined and charismatic leaders like Jomo Kenyatta of Kenya and Julius Nyerere of Tanganyika that could have easily mobilized the masses.
11. In Uganda, there was very slow town development or Urbanization and therefore, people were mainly in the villages than in urban centres as the case was in Kenya where there were: Nairobi, and Kisumu among other town. This indeed slowed down the development of nationalism.
12. Too much monarchism. In Uganda by 1930, the people had stronger attachment to their Kingdoms, for example Buganda, Bunyoro, and Ankole and among others. This limited the growth of nationalism in Uganda.
13. Differences in ideologically within the parties that were formed in Uganda. Uganda National Congress (UNC) and Uganda People Congress (UPC) became socialist centred while Democratic Party (DP) was capitalist oriented.
14. Buganda that had the best infrastructural development, social and economic power was totally opposed to the idea of unity hence delaying the growth of nationalism.
15. Very many people in Uganda were still uneducated because they preferred to stay in their villages. Attempts made to circulate leaflets to create awareness could not work because many people were illiterate.
16. Trade unions in Uganda that could have fully united Ugandans were not vibrant like in Kenya, hence leading to slow nationalism.
17. The scope of the Press was too limited in Uganda, for example the most recognized news papers were only in Luganda, for example Munno, and Uganda Eyogera among others. Therefore, such papers only appealed to Buganda’s interest.
18. Lack of bigger political parties like the case was in Kenya with KANU delayed the development of nationalism.

**FACTORS THAT LED TO THE RISE AND AWAKENING OF NATIONALISM IN UGANDA**

1. The attaining of education later by some people in Uganda like Ignatius Musaazi, Milton Obote and others who mobilized the people.
2. Formation of several political parties like Uganda People’s Congress, Uganda National Congress, Democratic Party, Progressive Party, KabakaYekka and others brought some unity in Uganda.
3. The role of trade unions, for example in 1945, Ignatius Musaazi formed the Uganda Farmers’ Federation. Later this was turned into the “Uganda Farmer’s Union” in 1960, and these trade unions drew people closer.
4. When Sir Andrew Cohen was appointed as Governor in Uganda, he increased the number of Ugandans sitting on the legislative council, that is to say by 11th August, 1953 out of 28 members, at least 14 were Ugandans.
5. The effect of the 2nd world war that ended in 1945 led to several ex-service men into Uganda and this led to nationalism.
6. The role played by United Nations organization that inspired Uganda into self rule.
7. The influence of the Mau-Mau rebellion of Kenya opened up the minds of Ugandans into active politics.
8. The role played by the press. They spread propaganda all over the country, hence awakening people.
9. The effects of colonialism ranging from exploitation to oppression.
10. Later towns like Jinja, Entebbe, and Kampala grew which acted as colleting centres to Ugandans.
11. The British policy of favouring Buganda tended to unite all other tribes together against Buganda.
12. Colonial infrastructural development, for example schools, roads and railways led to re-awakening of nationalism in Uganda.
13. The 1945 Manchester Conference inspired several Baganda into active politics.
14. The getting of independence by the Asian countries like India further instigated Ugandans, for example in 1960, Nehru the Prime-Minster of India invited Milton Obote at Bangalore and they discussed ways of getting independence.
15. The influence of the Kabaka crisis of 1953 that made Baganda to turn against the British and unite with other Ugandans who had already fallen out with the British.
16. The influence of the Egyptian revolution of 1952.Musaazi opened up his UNC offices in Cairo.
17. Influence of Western education. It also awakened the people of Uganda because through this education they became aware of the European intention of exploitation and later rebelled against them.
18. Emergence of super powers like America and Russia (USSR) that supported the issue of Self rule.
19. The construction of Uganda railway provided easy transport to mobilize the youth.
20. The signing of the Atlantic charter in 1941 by Roosevelt of the USA and Winston Churchill of Britain that stressed the importance of self rule.
21. Ghana’s independence of 1957 showed the Ugandans that it’s possible to get independence.

**CONTRIBUTION OF UNC TOWARDS THE INDEPENDENCE OF UGANDA**

1. UNC - stood for Uganda National Congress.
2. It was formed by Ignatius Musaazi, a former leader of the Farmers Union in Buganda.
3. It was formed at the time when Kabaka Mutesa was deposed and deported to Britain.
4. It was the most dynamic political party formed at the time. Some of its other leaders were Joseph Kiwanuka and Abu Mayanja.
5. It was mainly of the middle class people in Buganda.
6. It pioneered national struggle for self rule in Uganda.
7. UNC increased greater African representation on the Legislative council.
8. It opposed the idea of East African federation which later failed.
9. It strongly worked for national unity in Uganda for self rule.
10. It pioneered nationalism in Uganda.
11. It directed Uganda’s voice towards the need for self rule.
12. The UNC weaknesses were to be improved by the nationalists to complete the struggle of Uganda’s independence.
13. It opened up doors for other political parties in Uganda like DP, UPC and others.
14. It was partly due to the UNC’s pressure that the Kabaka was released. This action won a lot of sympathy in Buganda for UNC.
15. Later, the UPC - KY alliance contributed to the independence of Uganda on 9th October 1962.

**CONTRIBUTION OF DEMOCRATIC PARTY (DP) TO THE INDEPENDENCE STRUGGLE OF UGANDA**

1. Democratic Party was established in 1954 by Joseph Kasolo.
2. 1n 1956, he was replaced by Matayo Mugwanya who had been denied the post of being a Katikiro of Buganda by Kabaka Mutesa II because he was a Catholic.
3. From 1958, DP was led by Benedicto Kiwanuka, a devoted Catholic, a Muganda and a prominent advocate in Kampala up to the time of independence.
4. Democratic Party had great influence and it therefore established branches in the whole country.
5. DP was formed with the objectives of providing leadership with ability to work for the people’s interest in the Legislative Council.
6. It had wanted to develop a Capitalist economy unlike UNC which was following a Socialist idea.
7. DP had also wanted to protect Catholics interest against the Protestants who had monopolized all the good jobs.
8. It was also formed with the aim of attaining independence for the whole of Uganda.
9. DP was opposed by the traditionalists in Buganda because its leader Kiwanuka did not support the traditional rulers.
10. It was also catholic in its viewpoint.
11. It was at first dominated by the Baganda so it was not supported immediately outside Buganda.
12. But as time went on DP registered a number of achievements because it got support all over Uganda but mostly in Ankole, Busoga, West Nile, Kigezi, Acholi and Buganda.
13. DP managed to mobilize the masses for independence in 1962.
14. DP won majority seats in the 1961 elections, for example it got 43 seats, UPC 35, UNC 1 and others got 2 seats.
15. DP leadership was taken over in the 1980 by Dr. Paul Kawanga Ssemogerere who contested for presidency in the 1980 elections but lost to UPC under Obote. He contested again in the 1996 general elections organised by National Resistance Government and it lost again.
16. The leadership of DP was handed over to Ssebana Kizito who also contested in the 2006 presidential election again organised by the Movement government but he lost to Yoweri Kaguta Museveni’s National Resistance Movement (NRM) Party.
17. Currently DP leadership is under Mr. Norbert Mao who was elected in a delegate conference held in Mbale in 2010. He contested in the February 2011 presidential election but lost to NRM under Yoweri Museveni.
18. Democratic Party played a great role in Uganda’s independence struggle and it has continued to play a great role in shaping Uganda’s political affairs.

**CAREER AND CONTRIBUTION OF BENEDICTO KIWANUKA TO THE INDEPENDENCE STRUGGLE OF UGANDA**

1. Benedicto Kiwanuka was born in May 1922 in the present day Masaka District.
2. He went to Villa Maria primary school and later to St.Peter’s Nsambya for his secondary education. Both were catholic schools.
3. Kiwanuka later joined the British army the “African Pioneer Corps” and served in the Second World War. He spent time in Kenya, Egypt, and Palestine. He later got the rank of sergeant Major in the colonial army.
4. After the war, he came back and worked in the High Court as a clerk and interpreter by 1947.
5. While working in the court, he developed interest in law profession. He then left for South Africa in the Basutoland where he studied Latin.
6. Between 1952 and 1965 Benedicto Kiwanuka went to London University and studied law.
7. On coming back in 1956 Kiwanuka joined legal profession as a lawyer.
8. In 1956 he joined membership of Democratic Party (DP) which was formed in 1954 by Joseph Kasolo.
9. In 1958 Kiwanuka became the president of DP and as the president of DP, he made a number of changes and the party became very active throughout the country.
10. Kiwanuka changed DP from just an association into a real political party to struggle for independence for the whole country.
11. Benedicto Kiwanuka was not in support of the idea of granting only Buganda separate independence. This made him to clash with the Buganda government over such politics.
12. He joined politics with the major aim of fighting colonial oppression rather than for material gains.
13. In the 1961 Legislative Council elections, DP under Kiwanuka won majority seats of 43 seats against UPC 35, UNC 1 and others 2. This election also led Uganda to self independence status. He therefore became the Chief Minister.
14. Kiwanuka led the DP delegation to the Uganda Constitutional Conference at the Lancaster House in London in October 1961.
15. Benedicto Kiwanuka at the Conference walk out in protest because of the agreement made between the Buganda government and the British government; for a separate government for Buganda Kingdom.
16. This was a clear indication that Benedicto Kiwanuka was a real Nationalist.
17. In March 1962, Uganda got self government with Kiwanuka Benedicto as the first prime Minister.
18. In May 1962, fresh elections were held and DP under Benedicto Kiwanuka lost. Kiwanuka even lost in his constituency as a member of Legislative Council. There was a coalition between Kabaka Yekka (KY) under Mutesa II and UPC under Obote.
19. Benedicto Kiwanuka formed the opposition side.
20. In 1963, Kiwanuka was arrested by Obote who was by then the new Prime Minister of Uganda. He was later released.
21. In 1969, there was an attempted assassination on Obote. Kiwanuka was alleged to be one of the plotters. His DP party was then banned.
22. Kiwanuka and other several DP members including Paul Kawanga SSemogerere were arrested and imprisoned until 1971. They were released by Idi Amin when he took over power from Obote.
23. Benedicto Kiwanuka served in Amin’s government as the Chief Justice.
24. While serving under Amin, he openly criticized violation of human rights and because of this; he fell out with Amin who even planned to kill him.
25. It’s alleged that he met his death when he judged a case against Amin’s government and a European who was arrested from Lugazi Sugar Works by Amin’s soldiers.
26. The case was presented to Benedicto Kiwanuka who dismissed it on the ground that the soldiers did not have arrest warrant and therefore had no “power” of arresting a person.
27. On 21st September 1972 Kiwanuka was picked up by force from his office at the High Court premise and taken to Makindye Military Police then to Lubiri Barracks. On 22nd September 1972 he was slaughtered by Amin himself, as rumour has it.
28. Benedicto Kiwanuka is remembered as one of Uganda’s greatest Nationalists who died for freedom, justice and human rights.

**CONTRIBUTION OF UGANDA PEOPLE’S CONGRESS (UPC) TO THE INDEPENDENCE STRUGGLE OF UGANDA**

1. The Uganda People’s Congress (UPC) was formed in 1960 by Dr Apollo Milton Obote.
2. Obote’s group of UNC joined with Uganda People’s Union (UPU) to become Uganda People’s Congress (UPC).
3. In 1960 UPC made an alliance with the Kabaka Yekka (KY) party to contest in the 1961 elections against the Democratic Party (DP) which was considered a very strong party.
4. The UPC-KY union won majority seats in the April 1962 pre-independence elections.
5. UPC-KY formed government and therefore led Uganda to independence on 9th October 1962.
6. UPC was instrumental in mobilizing Ugandans to demand for their independence.
7. UPC identified and cultivated a good leader, Apollo Milton Obote as a capable, hardworking, foresighted and devoted leader.
8. In 1966 UPC fell out with KY due to power struggle for the topmost leadership.
9. In 1969, Obote declared the “Move to the left”, a socialist ideology. This was done to create unity and development. All the parastatals were nationalized.
10. On 25th January 1971, UPC was overthrown by its own army under the command of Idi Amin Dada while Obote was attending a common wealth summit at Singapore. He alleged that Obote was Corrupt and was a dictator.
11. While in exile Obote’s UPC and other exiles tried to fight Amin. They invaded Uganda through Kagera Salient in Tanzania but they were pushed back by Amin’s forces.
12. In 1979 with the support of Julius Nyerere of Tanzania, UPC under Obote and his group overthrew Amin on 11th April 1979.
13. In May 1980, Obote returned home in a heroic welcome. He, right away organised UPC, his party to participate in the December 1980 general elections.
14. The December 1980 general elections were contested between four political parties, namely UPC under Milton Obote, DP under Paul Semogerere, Conservative Party (CP) under Johash Mayanja Nkangi and Uganda Patriotic Movement (UPM) under Yoweri Museveni.
15. UPC under Obote won although with a claim of vote rigging from other political parties.
16. UPC under Dr Apollo Milton Obote ruled Uganda for the second time until July 1985 when he was overthrown again by his own army in yet another military coup on the ground that he was a dictator and tribalistic.
17. Obote remained the President General of UPC until October 2005.
18. UPC remained under Dr Apollo Milton until he passed away on 10th October, 2005 at the age of 81 due to kidney failure in a South African Hospital.
19. UPC leadership was passed over to Obote’s wife Mama Miria Nakitto Kalule Obote after UPC delegate conference held in November 2005. She took part in the 23rd February 2006, elections.
20. Mama Miria Kalule Obote in turn passed over the leadership of UPC to Dr John Olara Otunnu who heads it up to date.

**CAREER AND CONTRIBUTION OF DR APOLLO MILTON OBOTE IN THE STRUGGLE FOR INDEPENDENCE OF UGANDA**

1. Dr Apollo Milton Obote was born in Akokoro village in Lango in the present day Apac district to chief Stanley Opeto.
2. Obote attended his primary education at a mission school.
3. He then went to Busoga College Mwiri for his secondary education.
4. He later joined Makerere University College, but he never finished.
5. Obote left for Kenya to work with Mowlem Construction Company as a clerk.
6. While in Kenya, Obote became one of the founders of Kenya National Union in 1947.
7. He came back to Uganda in 1950 and became a member of Uganda National Congress (UNC), a political party of Ignatius Musaazi. He was appointed Chairman UNC, Lango Branch.
8. In 1958 Obote was appointed to the Legislative council representing Lango Sub region.
9. When UNC split into two in 1957, Obote became the leader of one of the groups.
10. Obote’s group of UNC joined with Uganda People’s Union (UPU) to become Uganda People’s Congress (UPC) under Milton Obote in 1960.
11. In the 1961 election, Obote UPC lost to the Democratic Party (DP) of Benedicto Kiwanuka.
12. Benedicto Kiwanuka therefore became the leader of Legislative Council (LEGICO) and Obote became the opposition leader.
13. It was in the LEGICO that Obote strongly demanded for self rule.
14. In the elections which were to see Uganda being granted self rule, Obote’s UPC made an alliance with Kabaka Yekka, a traditional or royalist party in 1961.
15. On 1st March 1961, Uganda was granted self rule.
16. The final elections for Uganda’s independence were in April 1962. Obote got a landslide victory with 58 seats in parliament for UPC/KY alliance against DP’s only 24 seats.
17. On 9th October 1962, Uganda was granted independence. Apollo Milton Obote became the executive Prime Minister and Sir Edward Mutesa, the leader of KY as the first President of Uganda.
18. Obote’s leadership was punctuated with conflicts between himself and the president Sir Edward Mutesa. This was majorly because of who was higher in leadership of the country.
19. Subsequently Obote order for the attack of the Kabaka’s palace at Lubiri under the command of Idi Amin Dada. This forced the Kabaka into exile in the United Kingdom via Rwanda.
20. Obote then declared himself the executive President of Uganda.
21. In 1967, Obote changed the constitution, abolished all Kingdoms and Uganda therefore became a republic.
22. In 1969, Obote declared the “Move to the left”, a socialist ideology. This was done to create unity and development. All the parastatals were nationalized.
23. On 25th January 1971, Milton Obote was overthrown by his own army while attending a common wealth summit at Singapore. He alleged that Obote was Corrupt and was a dictator.
24. While in exile Obote and other exiles tried to fight Amin. They invaded Uganda through Kagera Salient in Tanzania but they were pushed back.
25. In 1979 with the support of Julius Nyerere of Tanzania, Obote and his group overthrew Amin on 11th April 1979.
26. In May 1980, Obote returned home in a heroic welcome.
27. He right away organised his UPC party to participate in the December 1980 general elections.
28. The December 1980 general elections were contested between four political parties, namely UPC under Milton Obote, DP under Paul Semogerere, Conservative Party (CP) under Johash Mayanja Nkangi and Uganda Patriotic Movement (UPM) under Yoweri Museveni.
29. UPC under Obote won although with a claim of vote rigging from other political parties.
30. Dr Apollo Milton Obote ruled Uganda for the second time until July 1985 when he was overthrown again by his own army in yet another military coup.
31. Meanwhile, Yoweri Museveni a UPM candidate and a sympathizer of DP believed to have won the 1980 general elections went to the bush to fight Obote’s government.
32. Obote was overthrown by Generals Bazilio Olara-Okello and Tito Okello-Lutwa on the ground that he was a dictator and tribalistic. That he had also refused to hold peace talks with Yoweri Museveni, who went to wage a guerilla war against Obote’s government on account of the 1980 general elections claimed to have been marred by vote rigging.
33. Obote for the second time fled the country via Kenya to Zambia where spent the rest of his life.
34. He remained the President General of UPC until October 2005.
35. Dr Apollo Milton passed away on 10th October, 2005 at the age of 81 due to kidney failure in a South African Hospital.
36. The UPC leadership was passed over to Obote’s wife Mama Miria Nakitto Kalule Obote after UPC delegate conference held in November 2005. She took part in the 23rd February 2006, elections.

**Revision questions**

1. What factors delayed Nationalism in Uganda between 1945 and 1962?
2. What factors led to the rise and awakening of Nationalism in Uganda?
3. What was the contribution of UNC towards the independence of Uganda?
4. Describe the contribution of Democratic Party (DP) towards the independence struggle of Uganda.
5. Describe the life, career and contribution of Benedicto Kiwanuka to the independence struggle of Uganda.
6. Describe the contribution of Uganda People’s Congress (UPC) towards the independence struggle of Uganda.
7. Describe the life, career and contribution of Dr Apollo Milton Obote to the independence struggle of Uganda.

**NATIONALISM IN KENYA**

**FACTORS THAT DELAYED THE RISE OF NATIONALISM IN KENYA**

1. Nationalism refers to ones love for his country, it was the desire for East Africans to administer themselves thus it involved activities that aimed at gaining independence.
2. The influence of having so many Europeans who controlled the economy of the Kenyans for quite along period.
3. The large number of Asians especially Indians in Kenya also who controlled Business in Kenya hindered the rise of nationalism.
4. Disagreements among Kenya nationalists, for example Tom Mboya of KANU disagreed with Ngala of KADU.
5. Poor Kenyans were not trained as leaders in their country by the British.
6. Divisionism and ethnicity in Kenya, for example Kikuyu against Masai.
7. The British system of divide and rule of administration led to divisionism among the Kenyans.
8. The banning of political party activities in Kenya earlier on also delayed Nationalism, for example KAU in 1953.
9. The British harsh treatment on the earlier nationalists, for example Kenyatta and his colleagues were all at one time imprisoned.
10. British proved to be much more militarily superior to the level of Kenyans, this disorganized the Kenyans.
11. The slow level of constitutionalism in Kenya also delayed the development of nationalism.
12. The natives of Kenya were too illiterate. They were not in apposition to follow what was going on Kenya despite the attempts made to put things in writing.
13. Too much poverty among the natives of Kenya, this meant that Kenyans had more pressing issues than independence to handle for sometime due to poverty.

**FACTORS THAT LED TO THE RISE OF NATIONALISM IN KENYA**

1. Coming up of political parties, for example the KAU that spread nationalism among the Kikuyu.
2. The influence of mass media in Kenya, for example Radio Cairo Swahili service, Sauti -Ya-Mwafirika and others.
3. The role of the Second World War and Ex- service men which later enlightened the Kenyans.
4. The Atlantic charter of 1941 that stressed the importance of self rule.
5. The influence of the Egyptian revolution of 1952 encouraged the Kenyans.
6. The role played by independent churches. They condemned colonialism through pastors like Elijah Masinde among others.
7. Influence of western education. People like Tom-Mboya, Jomo-Kenyatta, Oginga Odinga and others due to their education, mobilized Kenyans for independence.
8. The influence of Welfare Associations that were formed in Kenya, for example the Northern Kavirondo Central Association, Kamba members Association and others mobilised people in Kenya.
9. Swahili language that created unity among the Kenyans in different parts.
10. Development of infrastructures like roads, railways and encouraged the growth of nationalism in Kenya.
11. Development of urban centres in Kenya like Nairobi, Mombasa, Kisumu that were gathering centres to so many people in Kenya.
12. The domination of Kenyan economy by the Indians (Asians) in Kenya went along way in creating nationalistic feelings among the Kenyans
13. Forced labour on white plantations in Kenya spread discontents that led to rise of nationalism.
14. Taking away of Kenyan land by the British created a sense of resentment or anger that led to rise of nationalism in Kenya.
15. The “Kipande” notorious system in Kenya that denied the Africans chance to move within their country freely also later led to development of Nationalism.
16. The role played by Trade unions, for example Mombasa African worker Union and others united the people for political challenges.
17. The role of vibrant leaders like Jomo Kenyatta, Tom Mboya and others led the Kenyans into political agitations or demands.
18. The role of Mau-Mau movement in Kenya united Africans against Europeans for a common goal that is getting independence.
19. The granting of independence to India and Pakistan in 1947 spread to Kenya in the 1950s when the war veterans demanded for independence.
20. The 5th Pan African congress held in Manchester in 1955 where even Jomo-Kenyatta was present aroused nationalism among the Kenyans.
21. The success of the Algerian revolution of 1954 onwards inspired the Kenyans.
22. The role of United Nations organization that inspired all countries who were not yet independent to struggle for independence.

**MAU MAU REBELLION IN KENYA OF THE 1950s**

**CAUSES OF MAU-MAU REBELLION**

1. Mau-Mau was an uprising in Kenya against the British. Mau- Mau was an abbreviation for “Muzungu Arudi Ulaya, Mwafrika Apate Uhuru” which was translated to mean “Let the whites go back to England so that the Africans (Kenyans) get freedom”.
2. Mau-Mau was formed by the ex-soldiers of World War II in 1946 to fight Europeans. The causes were:
3. The rise of ex-service men from World War II who were determined. They inspired or encouraged people to join.
4. The rise of nationalism in Kenya after 1940’s greatly caused the Mau-Mau.
5. Need to gain independence from the British by the Kenyans, that is to say the Kenyans were not happy to be under foreign rule.
6. The British practiced racial segregation in which they looked at blacks as inferior in their own country which was greatly annoying.
7. Need to regain land forced the natives in Kenya to fight in the Mau-Mau rebellion, that is to say a lot of African fertile land had been taken away by the British and in an effort to recover the land, the Mau-Mau had to be fought.
8. Overtaxation where the British imposed very high taxes onto the Kenyan people which annoyed them because the taxes left the people completely poor.
9. Forced labour by which Kenyans were made to forcefully provide labour on European plantations.
10. The return of Jomo Kenyatta and his determination to fight British dominance in Kenya Jomo Kenyatta was highly vocal and he encouraged people to organize the Mau-Mau rebellion.
11. Denying of Africans their freedom especially by putting them into reserves that were too crowded. This left them with no option but to fight the British.
12. Africans needed to grow cash crops yet the British restricted the growing of cash crops among the Africans. This caused war hysteria or madness among the Africans in Kenya.
13. Africans were not given full opportunities in Education and yet they needed to be educated to complete with other races like Asians, Europeans in job opportunity.
14. The forceful introduction of identity card called the “Kipande system”. This limited the movement of Kenyans within their home land and was too unfair.
15. There was an increased unemployment among the Africans that plunged them into total poverty.
16. Disrespect of African cultures by the whites in Kenya greatly annoyed the Kenyans. Even the African cultural leaders were not fully respected by the British which was highly annoying to the Africans.

**COURSE OF THE MAU MAU REBELLION**

1. Many Africans from Kenya involved into the second world war of 1939- 1945. While there, the Africans leant military experiences and so on.
2. From 1946 on wards several ex-soldiers came back from World War II. The Coming of ex-service men revealed that the British were oppressing Africans to the maximum.
3. Therefore by 1950, the Mau-Mau fighters started mobilizing their friends which worried the British.
4. From 1950 -52, Kenyans carried out brutal acts like murdering those supporting the colonial system. In fact in 1952*,* the Mau-Mau fighter murdered a chief by the name of Waruhiu. Such activities greatly upset the British.
5. The first three years when Mau Mau broke out were worst. The British government failed to put off the rebellion. The Mau Mau fighters were getting some information from government agents. They were also getting food supplies and guns from government agents.
6. On 20th October 1952, the British governor Sir Evelyn Baring declared a state of emergency in Kenya.
7. Sir Evelyn Baring therefore called on the “KAR”, the King’s African Rifles, the colonial soldiers to contain the movement; soldiers from London were also called in to join the operation.
8. The police and the government troops raided Nairobi town and Kikuyu highlands where it was believed to be the hiding places for Mau Mau fighters.
9. Many Kenyans were rounded and kept in emergency villages for their own security and to stop them from being in contact with the Mau Mau fighters.
10. Even Jomo Kenyatta was arrested although he had openly condemned the militaristic approach by the Mau Mau fighters. In April 1953 he was imprisoned for seven years in jail but fighting went on.
11. In January 1954, General China one of the freedom fighters and the key commander of the rebellion was captured and sentenced to death by the British.
12. Dedani Kimathi, another key commander continued to fight on in the Aberdare forest but he was captured in 1956 and also sentenced to death.
13. In April 1954, 26000 Kikuyu who could not give a reason for being in Nairobi were rounded up.
14. From 1955 -1957 serious fighting took place between the British forces and those of the Africans, several arrests of natives were conducted especially those suspected to be linked to the Mau-Mau.
15. By 1957, the Mau-Mau had been considerably crushed though this serious rebellion reached l960.
16. The state of emergency which had been declared was uplifted by the British government.

**WHY MAU MAU REBELLION WAS DEFEATED.**

1. Mau Mau rebellion was defeated due political, social and economic reasons.
2. The British were militarily superior compared to the Africans. They had modern weapons compared to the Africans who had old fashioned weapons such as spears, pangas, stones, sticks, and clubs among others.
3. The British applied divide and rule policy against the Africans and this completely put off their unity against their common enemies, the British.
4. The Africans had been hit hard by disease like malaria and small pox. This weakened their resistance the more.
5. Some Africans in Kenya collaborated with the British against their fellow Africans hence their defeat. There were therefore some acts of betrayal from the sides of Africans.
6. The people of Kenya had poor military organization compared to the British whom they were fighting against.
7. The British were also so determined to make Kenya remain under their control despite the wave of the quest for independence in most developing countries.
8. There was serious lack of Nationalism among most Kenyans. Other tribes in Kenya believed the war was a Kikuyu issue. They did not actively join in, hence Mau Mau defeat.
9. The Kenyan local leaders who were behind Mau Mau rebellion lacked strong economic support to meet the war cost. There was even no food supply to the Mau Mau fighters.
10. The arrest and imprisonment of the ring leaders of Mau Mau dealt a big blow to the fighters. They were discouraged from serious fighting.
11. Too much belief in superstition and traditional religion also undermined their resistance. The belief did not help them in any way because they proved to be just misleading.
12. Besides the Christian missionaries preaching did not also favour African beliefs instead it weakened them. It made the Africans to believe that African traditional religion and beliefs were satanic.
13. The military tactics of hit and run that the Kenyans later resorted to was not effective, hence their defeat.
14. The Kenyans were also not well organised militarily in their war against the British.
15. Many tribes in Kenya had inter-tribal conflicts and this also limited their unity against the British.
16. There were some chiefs among the Kenyan communities that supported the British yet they were not aware of their intentions.
17. The British also used scorch earth policy. They destroyed all means of survival for the Africans. Buildings, forests, foodstuffs and animals at sight were all killed. This forced the Kenyan nationalists to surrender.
18. The Mau Mau fighters were abandoned by the traditional religious leaders like Gikuyu and Mumbi.
19. Besides the use of ancestral spirits to bring psychological courage, confidence and determination did not work because many fighters perished in large number. The few who had remained later surrendered.
20. The terrain also did not favour the fighters. They were fighting in a very small area where the British later surrounded them and they surrendered.
21. Mau Mau rebellion was also defeated because of lack of foreign support. Other African states in addition to the ones in East Africa did not support the fighters. Besides the Africans were still under colonial rule. Therefore no European powers supported the rebels.
22. Britain was able to defeat the Mau Mau rebels because of re-enforcements given to them from Uganda, Tanganyika, Zanzibar and United Kingdom. These troops later defeated the rebels.

**EFFECTS OF THE MAU MAU REBELLION**

1. The effects were both positive and negative.
2. They were also political, social and economic in nature.
3. There was loss of lives on both sides of the Europeans and Africans. It is estimated that about 58 British and 25000 Africans perished during this rebellion.
4. A lot of property was destroyed during the fighting. Heavy guns had been used by the British which caused a lot of havoc on the African property.
5. The poor Africans were seriously defeated by the British but nevertheless the struggle was not completely negative.
6. Famine resulted because Agricultural activities had been put to a stand still, yet also plantations had been destroyed.
7. The African leaders who were involved in the rebellion like Jomo Kenyatta were imprisoned which instead increased their desire to fight for native freedom.
8. Kenyans never got their independence which they were fighting for.
9. The war was costly on both sides; the Africans lost their resources whereas the British lost a lot of money in financing the war.
10. Kenyans were sent into camps, that is to say over 50,000 Kikuyu people were rounded up and pushed to reserves or camps.
11. There was serious economic decline in Kenya. Trade was disrupted.
12. Displacement of family members within the areas of Mau-Mau speeded up nationalism within Kenya.
13. British leant a lesson that the Africans were not animals and therefore deserved to be treated humanly.
14. The Africans too learnt a lesson that force would never claim back their independence. From then onwards they resorted to peaceful solution to their problems.
15. Africans were given the chance to sit on the Legislative council, that is to say in 1958, four Africans were elected to the Legislative council (LEGICO), the parliament of the time. These were: Ronald Ngala, Odinga Oginga, Tom Mboya and Daniel Arap Moi.
16. Africans reclaimed some of the land that had been lost to the British.
17. The rebellion further strengthened the popularity of men like Jomo Kenyatta, it’s no wonder he led Kenyans into Independence.
18. Infrastructures like roads, schools, agricultural activities among others were extended to the Africans.
19. Britain was urged to transform Kenya into a settler colony permanently. This was a   
    death blow.
20. The Whites slowly started moving away from Kenya.
21. The Mau-Mau inspired nationalistic awakening to other East African countries like Uganda and Tanganyika who also started struggling for their respective independence.
22. The African interests gained supremacy in the eyes of British administrators.

**CAREER AND ACHIEVEMENT OF JOMO KENYATTA IN THE STRUGGLE FOR INDEPENDENCE OF KENYA**

1. Kenyatta was born in 1894.
2. He was a Kikuyu by tribe.
3. Kenyatta received western education at first in Kenya but later he moved to England.
4. He was true sighted, determined and courageous.
5. He started involving himself in Kenyan politics as far back as 1922 when he participated in a protest against white domination.
6. Kenyatta eagerly joined the Kikuyu Association and he even became its secretary.
7. Kenyatta worked in the civil government of the British in Kenya.
8. Kenyatta’s courage enabled him to start a news paper calledK.C.A which became vocal in fighting colonialism in Kenya.
9. Kenyatta went to England to present different topics about the suffering of Kenyan natives over land.
10. Kenyatta went to different European countries and Russia from where he got influenced with socialism.
11. Kenyatta was among the Africans who strongly protested against the Italian invasion of Ethiopia in 1935.
12. Jomo-Kenyatta had vowed not to shave his beards until Ethiopian soil had been vacated by the Italians.
13. In 1938, Kenyatta wrote an article called” Facing Mountain Kenya”, in which he praised African culture, attacked British cultures and so on.
14. In. 1945, Kenyatta was among those who attended the Pan African Conference in Manchester where he met other strong African Nationalists like Nkrumah of Ghana.
15. From Manchester, Kenyatta came back a truly changed African Nationalist; he had learnt a lot from those interactions.
16. When Kenyatta came back in Kenya, he immediately joined the KAU which soon gave him its presidency in 1947.
17. Kenyatta encouraged teachers, students and other educated people to join the KAU.
18. When the Mau-Mau started in Kenya Kenyatta was implicated and there after, he was imprisoned.
19. KANU was formed while Kenyatta was still serving his sentence in prison.
20. When Kenyatta was released in around 1961, he took over leadership of KANU and gave it enthusiasm or vibrancy in its work.
21. He struggled for the last stages in Kenyan independence.
22. He became the first Kenyan Prime Minister on 12th, December, 1964.

**THE KENYA AFRICAN NATIONAL UNION (KANU)**

1. KANU was formed in March 1960 by the majority of the African leaders who were in the Legislative Council.
2. The members elected its leader to be Jomo Kenyatta who was still in jail after being imprisoned for seven years because of leading the Mau Mau rebellion against the British rule.
3. James Gichuru was elected KANU’s president to stand in for Jomo Kenyatta. His vice president was Jaramogi Oginga Odinga while Tom Mboya became the Secretary General.
4. The majority members of KANU were the Kikuyu and Luo, the biggest ethnic groups in Kenya. The Embu, Meru, Kamba and Kisii tribes were also members.
5. The members were both rural and urban dwellers.
6. KANU aimed at uniting Kenya in the final struggle for independence.
7. When elections were held in 1961, KANU won 19 seats against Kenya African Development Union (KADU) of Ngala 11 seats and New Kenya Party (NKP) of Blundell 4 seats.
8. KANU refused to form a government protesting the detention of Kenyatta.
9. KANU remained united without splitting. Jomo Kenyatta was released in August 1961 and in 1962; he was elected to the legislative council under the ticket of KANU.
10. Kenyatta’s effort to make KANU and KADU unite failed. He then concentrated on the activities of KANU.
11. In February 1962, KANU under the leadership of Kenyatta attended the Second Lancaster Conference in London.
12. The second election was held in May 1963 and KANU won with 83 seats and the rest of the parties got 41 seats.
13. In June 1963, Kenya under KANU attained self rule also referred to as Madaraka with Jomo Kenyatta as a prime minister.
14. On 1st December, 1963 Kenya got full independence also called Uhuru under the leadership of KANU headed by Jomo Kenyatta.
15. In 1964 KANU absorbed KADU and it became Kenya’s only parliamentary party. Kenyatta therefore became the president of the republic of Kenya and Oginga Odinga as the vice president.

**Revision questions**

1. What delayed the rise of nationalism in Kenya?
2. What factors led to the rise of nationalism in Kenya?
3. Why was there the Mau-Mau uprising in Kenya.
4. Describe the course of Mau-Mau- rebellion.
5. What were the effects of the Mau - Mau?
6. Why did the African resistance of the 1950s Kenya against colonial rule fail?
7. Describe the career and achievement of Mzee Jomo Kenyatta in the struggle for the independence.
8. Describe the activities of Kenya African National Union (TANU) in the struggle for independence for Kenya.

**NATIONALISM IN TANZANIA**

**FACTORS FOR THE GROWTH OF NATIONALISM IN TANZANIA**

1. Nationalism refers to ones love for his country, it was the desire for East Africans to administer themselves thus it involved activities that aimed at gaining independence.
2. Swahili language that played a pivotal role or important role in uniting masses in Tanzania.
3. The rising of mass political parties such as TANU that united the Tanzanians for independence.
4. The inspirational role of Julius Nyerere who inspired and encouraged the Tanzanians to unite against the oppressive German rule.
5. The role of UNO and its assistance towards the independence struggle of Tanzanians.
6. The oppressive and exploitive German rule in Tanzania united the natives against the Germans as common enemies.
7. Over taxation of the Tanzanians by the Germans also made them to develop Nationalism.
8. The taking away of African land by the Germans forced the Africans against them.
9. The example and inspiration got from the earlier Maji-Maji rebellion in Tanzania, though it was crushed, it later inspired the natives to rise up.
10. The role of trade unions in Tanzania, for example the Tanganyika African Association and Bukoba- Bahaya Association that collected people together.
11. Asian domination of Tanzania’s economy brought unity among the natives against foreigners.
12. The inspiration provided by the Mau-Mau rebellion of 1952-1955 encouraged and motivated the people of Tanganyika.
13. The effects of World War II exposed the war veterans to better military tactics and the German weaknesses among other things that made them to mobilize the people of Tanganyika to rebel.
14. Western education obtained by people like Julius Nyerere made them to discover the exploitative tendencies of the Europeans.
15. Rise of vibrant men like Julius Nyerere who provided able leadership to those who were struggling for independence.
16. Improved transport and communication net works in most parts of Tanganyika.
17. The granting of independence to India and Pakistan in 1947 spread to Tanganyika in the 1950s when the war veterans demanded for independence.
18. The influence of the Egyptian revolution of 1952 encouraged the Kenyans.
19. The success of the Algerian revolution of 1954 onwards inspired Kenyans.
20. The early getting of independent by some African countries, for example Ghana in 1957.

**WHY TANZANIA WAS ABLE TO GAIN OR GET HER INDEPENDENCE EARLIER THAN UGANDA OR ANY EAST AFRICAN COUNTRIES.**

1. Tanganyika attained her first self internal self government on 1st, may 1961 with Mwalimu Julius Nyerere as the Prime Minister.
2. On 9th, December, 1961 Tanganyika became fully independent.
3. In 1962, Tanganyika became a republic with Julius Nyerere as its first President.
4. In April 1964, Tanganyika mainland made a union with Zanzibar Island under Julius Nyerere and Abed Karume to give birth to a new country now called **Tanzania.**

She was able to attain independence faster than any East African country or Uganda because of the following reasons.

1. Tanganyika had one important mass party that is say the Tanganyika African National Union (TANU) which was not the case with other African countries like Uganda.
2. Trade unions in Tanzania were stronger and more coordinated, for example Kilimanjaro Native Growers Association and Tanganyika African Association, among others.
3. The British system of administration, that is to say indirect rule thoroughly divided up people in Uganda but not Tanzania.
4. Having of one common language in Tanganyika, that is to say Kiswahili which was not in Uganda made the people of Tanganyika united and therefore, able to fight for their independence.
5. Serious land alienation in Tanzania by the Germans aroused nationalism in Tanzania earlier, this was not in Uganda.
6. The attractive and vibrant role of Mwalirnu Julius Nyerere that was notcomparable to any nationalist in Uganda.
7. The arrogance and seclusion or isolation of Baganda who were at the peak in social, economic and political set up kept Uganda behind but not in Tanzania.
8. Uganda, one of the East African countries, for example never had scratching economic problems like Tanzania.
9. The influence of white settlers in Tanzania made colonialism more real, oppressive and exploitive in Tanzania but not in Uganda where no settler’s areas were established.
10. Whereas Uganda was under the direct control of Britain after 1945, Tanzania was blessed for being just under the “UN” trusteeship council which UN, pressurized for the Independence of colonies.
11. In Uganda ethnicity and Tribalism was much serious than in Tanzania.

**CAREER AND ACHIEVEMENTS OF JULIUS NYERERE IN TANGANYIKA’S INDEPENDENCE STRUGGLE**

1. Nyerere was born in March 1922.
2. He was a son of chief Burito, the father and Mugaya, the mother, all of a small tribe called Zanaki.
3. He was born in the village of Butiama South East of Lake Victoria.
4. Nyerere lived a rural life despite his chiefly background.
5. Nyerere tried to learn some leadership qualities from his father who was a chief.
6. He studied at Musoma Primary School.
7. He then went to Tabora government school for lower secondary, where he was appointed a prefect and discovered that the student leaders were given privileges, something which he never liked.
8. He went to Makerere college school in Uganda in 1945 where he obtained a Diploma in Education.
9. He taught for a while at St.Mary’s Tabora, a school for the White Fathers.
10. Later, he left for further studies in Edinburg University of Scotland in 1949.
11. While in the University, Nyerere studied and learnt Economics, History and Philosophy.
12. He obtained a Master of Arts in History, Economics and Philosophy in 1952.
13. He went to Britain where he met several Pan-Africanists and discussed related to colonialism.
14. Nyerere’s ambition was to lead a national struggle to free his people from colonialism
15. He returned to Tanzania in 1953.
16. In 1953, he was elected president of TAA, that is to say Tanganyika African Association.
17. In 1954, Nyerere renamed TAA into TANU (Tanganyika Africa National Union) which led to a number of politica1 changes.
18. Nyerere tried to unite the people of Tanganyika very seriously to achieve independence.
19. From 1955 to 1956, Nyerere visited the UNO headquarters in New York to look for international support for the liberation of Tanzania.
20. He was nominated to membership of Legislative Council in1957 but resigned because of low progress.
21. Between 1958 and 1959, he organised his party TANU for election of member to the Legislative Assembly.
22. In 1960 elections which were organised, TANU won 71 seats and Nyerere became the first Prime Minister.
23. He campaigned for the independence of Tanganyika which he achieved on 9th, December 1961 almost by sole effort.

**TANGANYIKA AFRICAN NATIONAL UNION (TANU)**

**REASONS FOR THE FORMATION OF TANGANYIKA AFRICAN NATIONAL UNION (TANU)**

1. Tanganyika African National Union **(**TANU) originated from Tanganyika African Association (TAA) which was formed in 1922 by Martin Kayamba.
2. It was also called Saba -Saba.
3. TAA on its formation opened many branches all over Tanganyika and it was a national party by 1939.
4. Its members moved around in villages and urban centres in Tanganyika and rallied wide support among Africans.
5. The major concern of TAA was the slow progress in constitutional changes, as by 1951 there were only four Africans on the Executive council.
6. TAA was transformed into TANU on 7th July, 1954 in a conference held in Dar es Salaam by Julius Nyerere who had just returned from studies in Britain and was elected chairman of TAA.
7. It was therefore Julius Nyerere who turned TANU into a nationwide party after transforming it from TAA.
8. TANU therefore was a national fundamental mass national party that was not based on ethnic ground and the members consisted of educated Africans and rural peasants and miners.
9. TANU had clear role to ask for independence under majority African government. In its approach, it adopted non-violent means.
10. It was formed to prepare the people of Tanganyika for self rule and independence.
11. TANU was formed to fight against European exploitation of African resources like land, labour and minerals.
12. It would also struggle to bring national unity for all the people in Tanganyika.
13. TANU was supposed to fight against tribalism and destroy it.
14. It was formed to struggle for democratic government and to have representation in the both local district government and central government.
15. Under the colonial rule, there was racism and discrimination that TANU wanted to do away with.
16. TANU would also act as a mouth piece or platform for airing out African views against the white rule.
17. The Africans had been denied voting rights in Tanganyika. TANU was formed to fight for the extension of voting rights to the Africans.
18. TANU was formed to encourage the formation of trade unions to fight for the workers’ rights.

**THE CONTRIBUTIONS OF TANU IN THE POLITICAL HISTORY OF TANGANYIKA**

1. Tanganyika African National Union **(**TANU) originated from Tanganyika African Association (TAA) which was formed in 1922 by Martin Kayamba.
2. It was also called Saba -Saba.
3. TAA on its formation opened many branches all over Tanganyika and it was a national party by 1939.
4. Its members moved around in villages and urban centres in Tanganyika and rallied wide support among Africans.
5. The major concern of TAA was the slow progress in constitutional changes as by 1951 there were only four Africans on the Executive council.
6. TAA was transformed into TANU on 7th July, 1954 in a conference held in Dar es Salaam by Julius Nyerere who had just returned from studies in Britain and was elected chairman of TAA.
7. It was therefore Julius Nyerere who turned TANU into a nationwide party after transforming it from TAA.
8. TANU therefore was a national fundamental mass national party that was not based on ethnic ground and the members consisted of educated Africans and rural peasants and miners.
9. It made it clear that Tanganyika was an African territory and must be governed by majorly Africans.
10. Since Tanganyika was a mandate state under UN Trust Territories of the UN Trusteeship Council, TANU presented a report to the UNO visiting team proposing independence to Tanganyika.
11. Nyerere as the president of TANU visited the UN Secretariat in New York to explain TANU’s aims. He pressed for support and in the end he won much sympathy and respect.
12. TANU in 1957 demanded for independence within two years.
13. It demanded for elections reform of one man one vote which was rejected. Nyerere, its president then resigned his seat on the Legislative Council (LEGICO).
14. In 1958 elections TANU won a land slide victory to the LEGICO.
15. TANU got ministerial posts in 1959 when the British appointed five of its members to form part of the 12 man-council of ministers.
16. TANU also won the 1960 elections in which Nyerere became the Chief Minister.
17. It also brought national unity among the people of Tanganyika because it was a national party for both the educated and uneducated.
18. It worked closely with Governor Richard Turnbull to speed up the independence process for Tanganyika.
19. TANU requested for independence and on 9th December, 1961 Tanganyika was granted.
20. It also campaigned for economic and social progress of Africans such as better wages and agricultural production.
21. TANU promoted education in Tanganyika.
22. It made most of the workers in the civil service to be Africans. Special training scheme was organise to make the Africans gain skills in work.
23. It promoted infrastructural development in Tanganyika, for example road development.
24. It mobilized for support from the trade unions.
25. Through its peaceful approach, it made the British government to carry out political and constitutional changes in Tanganyika.
26. Tanganyika became a one party state in 1963, under TANU.
27. Tanganyika united with Zanzibar to form Tanzania in 1964 under TANU.
28. TANU identified and cultivated a good leader, Julius Nyerere as a capable, hardworking, foresighted and devoted leader.
29. In 1977, TANU combined with Afro-Shiraz Party (a party in Zanzibar) to form Chama Chama Mapinduzi (CCM), Tanzania’s ruling party.

**PROBLEMS THAT NATIONALISTS FACED IN EAST AFRICA DURING THEIR STRUGGLE FOR INDEPENDENCE**

1. Lack of enough funds to carry out their activities in their respective countries.
2. Ethnicity was still strong in some countries, for example Uganda. this made it difficult to mobilize for a national cause.
3. The natives of East Africa were still too poor and therefore were pre-occupied with the need for money than political work.
4. Too many people were illiterate hence they could not easily understand the work of nationalists.
5. Inadequate communication net works in most East African countries.
6. Most of the natives of East Africa were rural dwellers who were less concerned with nationalistic struggles.
7. Malice and sabotage from colonial governments. They would ban trade unions and political parties.
8. The inferiority complex was still high among the East African people. They feared the whites greatly.
9. Leadership wrangles were too common among the nationalists and the small political parties formed.
10. Different political ideologies in the East African states made the Nationalists to loose concentration and one sense of direction, for example socialism against capitalism.
11. Religious differences, for example in Uganda people were divided up along religious lines.
12. Lack of proper organization and coordination among nationalists.
13. Foreign interference in their organization completely disorganized the Nationalists.
14. Limited supply of guns to be used against the colonialists where there was need to apply force.
15. Lack of a common language in Uganda’s case failed the nationalists as they tried to sensitize people against their oppression by the whites.
16. The United Nations lacked vibrancy or zeal or eagerness towards the independence struggles in East Africa.

**Revision questions**

1. What factors led to the rise of nationalism in East Africa?
2. What factors led to the growth of nationalism in Tanzania?
3. Why was Tanzania able to get independence earlier than other East African country?
4. Describe the career and achievement of Julius Nyerere of Tanzania in the struggle for the independence.
5. What were the problems that nationalists faced in East Africa?
6. Describe the activities of Tanganyika African National Union (TANU) towards the independence struggle in Tanganyika

**CHAPTER 24**

**IMPORTANT DATES**

**IMPORTANT DATES AND YEARS TO NOTE ABOUT THE EAST AFRICAN COAST**

1. 500A.D Bantu had come from central Africa to the coast of East Africa.
2. By 800 A.D Arabs and Persians had settled at the coast.
3. By 1000 A.D the coast had Arabs, Bushmen and the Bantu.
4. 1000-1500A.D Arabs and Persians had settled at the coast of East Africa.
5. Between 13th and 15th Centuries, Swahili culture developed at the coast of East Africa.
6. 1550 founding of Mombasa (Probable)
7. 1270 AD Al-Hassan bin Suleiman built one of the greatest mosques at Kilwa.
8. 1490 Kilwa had lost its power.
9. 1498 Arrival of Vasco-Dagama
10. Around the 13th Century, Kilwa gained its strength.
11. By 16th century, Mombasa was a very powerful state.
12. Between 1200 and1500 A.D, Zanzibar was one of the richest coastal towns.
13. Around 12th century, Malindi was founded on the coast of Kenya.

**IMPORTANT DATES TO NOTE ABOUT PORTUGUESE CONQUEST ON THE EAST AFRICAN COAST**

1. 1498 Conquest of Portuguese begun at the coast of East Africa under Vasco-Dagama.
2. 1499 Vasco-Dagama returned to Portugal and informed leaders of the richness of the coast of East Africa.
3. 1500, Pedro Alvares made an unsuccessful effort to take over Sofala.
4. 1502, Vasco-Dagama returned to the coast of East Africa to begin actual taking over.
5. In 1503, Roy Laurenco Ravasco another Portuguese came and captured Mafia, Zanzibar and Pemba Islands.
6. 1504 Lopez Surez another person from Portugal attacked Kilwa.
7. 1505 Francisco D’Almeida was on his way to India, before, he made a stop over at the coast of East Africa and attacked Sofala, Kilwa and Mombasa.
8. From 1505-1507, Triasto De Carville still from Portugal captured Lamu, Kismayo, Brava, Pate, Oja and others.
9. 1509, the Islands of Mafia, .Pemba and Zanzibar were brought under Portuguese control.
10. 1510 almost the entire East African coast was under Portuguese control.
11. 1592 Fort Jesus was built at the coast of East African at Mombasa to strengthen Portuguese control.
12. 1580-1640 Spain and Portugal were united, this weakened Portuguese control.
13. 1698, the coastal people defeated the Portuguese in December.

**IMPORTANT DATES AND YEARS TO NOTE AT THE COAST AFTER THE COMING OF THE OMAN ARABS**

* 1. 1698 Oman Arabs imposed themselves at the coast.
  2. 1728 Portuguese tried to recapture the coast but the Arabs defeated them.
  3. 1741, a conflict begun among Sultans at the coast of east Africa.
  4. 1791, Seyyid Said was born in Muscat of Oman.
  5. 1804 Seyyid Said took over power after the killing of his father.
  6. 1807, Seyyid Said expanded the Mazrui influence on the coast.
  7. 1817 Seyyid Said at sea had solved the problem of the enemies in Oman and pirates.
  8. In 1817, Seyyid Said sent ships to the coast and captured Pate.
  9. 1840, Seyyid Said shifted his capital from Muscat (Oman) to Zanzibar.
  10. 1804, Seyyid Said’s father Sultan Bin Ahmed died.
  11. 1806 Seyyid Said decided to get rid of his cousin Bedr bin Said.
  12. In 1828, Seyyid Said visited Zanzibar and liked the area.
  13. In 1832 Seyyid Said made a trip to the coast of East Africa.
  14. 1818, Arabs first experimented with Cloves growing at the east of East Africa.
  15. 1833, an agreement was signed between the United States and Seyyid said giving him the right to trade.
  16. In 1839, Seyyid Said signed a treaty with Chief Fundikira of the Nyamwezi by which Said’s traders were to go to his area.
  17. 1844 Seyyid Said signed treaties with France and Germany over trade.
  18. 1807, a law was passed against Slave trade.
  19. 1833 Slavery was abolished.
  20. 1822 Seyyid Said signed the Moresby treaty aimed to stop slaves at the coast.
  21. 1824, Captain Owen set up the Owen Protectorate over Mombasa.
  22. 1845 Seyyid Said signed another treaty to end slavery that was the Hammerton treaty.
  23. 1856, Seyyid Said died.

**SOME IMPORTANT DATES AND YEARS TO NOTE ABOUT THE MIGRATION AND SETTLEMENTS INTO EAST AFRICA**

1. Around 1000A.D, Bantu had started their migration into East Africa from Congo.
2. Around 1300A.D, the Bantu crossed the Taita and Mt Kilimanjaro hills.
3. 1200-1600 A.D, the Giryama, Pokomo, Nyika and others moved northwards.
4. 1600- 1800A.D, the Kamba, Chuka and the Embu had moved to Kenyan highlands.
5. 1600-1700A.D, the Kingdom of Bunyoro Kitara broke up.
6. By 1700, the Nyamwezi had started trading in Indian Ocean trade.
7. 1650-1700, the Segeju group fled to Lamu.
8. 1450-1600 a number of Luo migrations occurred in East Africa.
9. 1550-1600, the Joka-Jok came in from Acholi land having passed Pubungu.
10. 1625, the second Jok-Owiny went Southwards through Mt Elgon, Budama and Busoga.
11. 1650, the Jok-Omolo had earlier settled to Nyanza.
12. 1730-1800 some of the Luo crossed the Kavirondo Gulf.
13. 1750, the Luo of Uyoma went across Lake Victoria into South Nyanza.
14. 1300 the Kalenjin got divided into two groups that is one group became to be known as Pokot.
15. 1000-1800A.D, the Plain Nilotics that is of Masai, Karamojong, and Teso arrived in East Africa.
16. 1800, the Masai had settled in the Uasin Gishu Plateau.
17. 1815, the first major war between Kwavi and the Masai occurred.
18. 1870 the Masai power had declined.
19. 1870 Outbreak of small pox, Rinder pest and locust among the Masai.
20. 1150-1500, Eastern Cushites had arrived in the present Somalia.
21. 1820-1835 Zulu expansion.
22. 1840, Ngoni arrived in southern Tanzania i.e. the “Maseko Ngoni.”
23. 1848, the Ufipa Ngoni were divided into five small groups.
24. 1848, Zwangendaba died.
25. 1860, the Gwangara Ngoni attacked and defeated Sangu and Hehe.
26. In 1871, Mirambo taught his warriors i.e. “the Ruga Ruga” military tactics of Ngoni.
27. 1874-1875, the Hehe defeated the Bena-Ngoni.
28. 1878-1881 war between Hehe and Gwangara.
29. 1250-1350, Tembuzi established a strong Kingdom around Lake Victoria.
30. 1500, Collapse of the Chwezi Empire.
31. 1350-1500A.D, Bunyoro Kitara empire’s existence.
32. 1852-18.69 Omukama Kamurasi governed Bunyoro.
33. 1870-1897 Kabalega governed Bunyoro.
34. 1850 birth of Kabalega to Omukama Kamurasi.
35. 1650, Karagwe installed a defeat on Bunyoro raiders.
36. 1800-1850 Bunyoro lost Mubende to Buganda.
37. 1700-1800, Bunyoro lost Kooki and Singo to Buganda.
38. 1650, Systematic expansion of Buganda Kingdom.
39. 1780-1789 Kabaka Jjunju waged wars against Bunyoro.
40. 1814- 1831 Kabaka Sekamanya annexed Bwera and Buwekula
41. 1831-1851, Kabaka Ssuna attacked Bunyoro and crushed it.
42. 1900 Buganda agreement gave Buyaga and Bugangaizi to Buganda.

**IMPORTANT DATES TO NOTE ABOUT THE MOVEMENT OF MISSIONARIES INTO EAST AFRICA**

1. 1844, John Kraft of the Church Missionary Society reached Zanzibar.
2. 1846, John Kraft and Johann Rebmann founded the Rabai Missionary Society.
3. 1848, Johann Rebmann became the first European to see Mt Kilimanjaro.
4. 1849, Kraft became the first European to see
5. Mount Kenya and reached Kitui in the same year.
6. 1853, Johann Kraft left east Africa.
7. 1855, Johann Kraft reached Europe with a rough map of Central Africa.
8. 1860, the Holly Ghost Fathers arrived at Zanzibar.
9. 1863, the Holly Ghost Fathers started a prospect in Bagamoyo.
10. 1877, the Church Missionary Society had reached Buganda.
11. 1878, the White Fathers reached Buganda.
12. 1862, Speke travelled into Buganda
13. 1876, the Protestant Missionaries; were sent into East Africa.
14. 1879, the Roman Catholic White Fathers established posts at Tabora and Kibanga.
15. 1868, the Holy Ghost fathers begun agreed slave settlement at Bagamoyo.
16. 1873, the legal ending of Slave trading.
17. 1856, Mackinnon started a steamship service at the coast of East Africa.
18. 1862, Speke and Grant found the Ripon falls. 1864, Samuel Baker and his wife went up the Nile, came across Lake Albert.
19. 1874 Stanley came back to East Africa.
20. 1875, Stanley had reached Lake Victoria.
21. 1875 April, Stanley helped Kabaka to fight his enemies. He also wrote a letter to England inviting Christian missionaries to Buganda.

**IMPORTANT YEARS TO NOTE ABOUT THE SCRAMBLE AND PARTITION OF EAST AFRICA**

1. 1884-1885, the Berlin conference was signed among European powers that set up rules for scramble.
2. 1885, the Berlin act that stated “ant European country to claim a land in Africa must provide representatives to administer that land.”
3. 1886, the Anglo-German agreement Britain and Germany over Buganda.
4. 1886-1899 conflicts erupted between Britain and Germany over Buganda.
5. 1890, Karl Peters went to Buganda and signed treaties with Kabaka Mwanga.
6. 1890, another Anglo- Germany agreement that gave Britain Zanzibar, Pemba, Kenya and Uganda while Germany took over Tanzania Helgoland Island and son
7. 1890’s conflicts between Mwanga and British.
8. 1899, Mwanga was exiled to the Island of Seychelles.
9. 1900, Buganda agreement
10. 1900, the Toro Agreement
11. 1901, the Ankole Agreement.
12. 1904, the Masai Agreement.
13. 1888, the Abushiri rebellion.
14. 1889, Abushiri the leader of Abushiri rebellion was hanged at Pangani. < 1884, Mwanga became King of Buganda at 18.
15. 1892, Meli the son of Chief Mandera of Chagga led his people against Germans at Moshi.   
    1893, Nyamwezi of Unyanyembe led by chief Siki of Tabora attacked the Germans but they were defeated
16. 1893, Tabora was captured by the Germans.
17. 1894, the Hehe under chief Mkwawa were defeated by the Germans.
18. 1898, Chief Mkwawa hanged himself in an effort to avoid being captured by the Germans.
19. 1905-1907, the Maji-Maji rebellion.
20. 1905, August the rebels burnt down Samanga town, they murdered traders, government employees and missionaries.
21. 1907, October, the government recruited 1000 soldiers from Germany.

**SOME OF THE YEARS SHOWING POLITICAL, SOCIAL, ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENTS IN EAST AFRICA (1900- 1970)**

1. 1884, H.H. Johnston urged Britain Government to set up a Killimanjaro protectorate.
2. 1885, German Protectorate set up by Carl Peters over Usagara, Ungulu, Ukarni and Witu.
3. 1886, British treaties in the Kilimanjaro region.
4. 1886, Anglo-German Agreement divided East Africa into spheres of influence.
5. 1887-1888 conflict between British and Germany trading companies in Tana River area.
6. 1889, Trade rivalry in Uganda.
7. 1890, Carl Peters obtained treaties with the Kabaka of Buganda and chief of Wanga Mukulu.
8. 1890 Anglo-Germany agreement defined Germany and Britain Spheres more closely.
9. 1890, German lost all influence north of the present Kenya — Tanzania border.
10. 1890, Germany took over direct control of her sphere from the Germany East Africa company.
11. 1894, Britain declared a protectorate over Uganda.
12. 1895, Britain established the British East Africa protectorate (Kenya).
13. 1894, January Colonel Colville, the new British Commissioner led Buganda army into Bunyoro.
14. 1891, the Imperial British cast African Company went Bankrupt.
15. 1896, the Kooki agreement made Kooki a county and its ruler became a country chief of Buganda.
16. 1897, Kabaka Mwanga rebelled against the British.
17. 1899 Mwanga and Kabalega were deported to Kismayu and latter to Seychelles.
18. 1900, the Buganda agreement
19. 1901, Uganda Railway reached Kisumu (Port Florence).
20. 1902, the area west of the Rift valley was given to the British East African protectorate.
21. 1904, Masai agreement was signed.
22. 1906, the British recognized Kasagama as the Omukama of Toro.
23. 1907, the Banyoro forced the agents to take refuge in Hoima.
24. 1909, Administrative stations were built at Kalongo among the Lango and the Acholi.
25. 1910, Administrative stations were built at Kitgum among the Acholi.
26. 1914, Administrative stations were built at Arua among the Alur, Madi, Lugbara and Kakwa.
27. 1907, a colonial department headed by Dr. Denburg was established.
28. 1905, the Matumbi rebelled.
29. 1904, the British government distributed high quality seeds to farmers in Uganda.
30. 1912, the first railway line in Uganda was completed.
31. 1896, work of Uganda railway construction started.
32. 1928, a branch line was completed of the railway between Tabora and Mwanza.
33. 1925, the young Kikuyu association was re-organized.
34. 1905, the European settler plantation owners began to experiment with Arabica coffee while Africans planted Robusta coffee.
35. 1925 N.K Mehta an Asian businessman built a refinery at Lugazi (Sugar).
36. 1920, Tea was planted in Mubende district in Uganda.
37. By 1931, there was a tea estate at Mengo near Kampala.
38. 1912, the railway reached Namasangali in Busoga.
39. 1899, the railway line reached Nairobi.
40. 1903, Lord Delamare from South Africa came into Kenya.
41. 1920, Large tea estates were put in Nakuru.
42. 1911-1928, the line of the railway from Nakuru to Eldoret was raid.
43. By 1931, Kenya and Uganda linked by railway.
44. 1931, gold was discovered in Kakamega.
45. 1905-1912, Coffee growing was introduced, among the Haya people of Bukoba.
46. 1922, in Tanzania the former European land was re-allocated to Africans.
47. 1924, the coffee growers formed the Kilimanjaro native Planters’ Association to improve coffee
48. 1929, Moshi line of railway reached Arusha.
49. 1953, the Owen falls Hydro-electricity schemes started.
50. 1954, Owen Falls Dam Hydro-electricity power generation was officially opened by the Queen of England.
51. 1965, the new Central Bank of Kenya was established.
52. 1937, the Arusha, Declaration was passed to nationalize industries and business in Tanzania.
53. 1963, Kenya was linked with Tanzania by Tanga railway line.
54. 1970, Nairobi to Mombasa road was completed.
55. 1961, Tanganyika got her independence. .

**IMPORTANT YEARS TO NOTE ABOUT STAGES TOWARDS THE ROAD TO INDEPENDENCE IN EAST AFRICA**

**TANGANYIKA**

1. 1945, The African members to the Tanganyika legislative Council numbered two only.
2. 1946, African representatives in Tanganyika increased to three.
3. 1947-1951, the African representatives to the legislative council had nine Africans, nine Europeans and nine Asians.
4. 1955, Dr. Julius Nyerere became president of Tanganyika African Association.
5. 1954, Tanganyika African Association was changed to Tanganyika African Nation at Union.
6. 1954, a United Nations mission paid a visit to Tanganyika. .
7. 1957, Nyerere was appointed as a member of the Legislative Council.
8. 1960, TANU advocated for achievement, of independence in 1961.
9. 1961 9th September, Tanganyika gained full independence with Nyerere as the first president.

**UGANDA**

1. 1941, Nsibirwa resigned as the Katikiro.
2. 1941 Samwiri Wamala replaced Nsibirwa as the new Katikiro.
3. 1945, Strikes everywhere in Buganda.
4. 1945, July restoration of Nsibirwa as Katikiro.
5. 1945 September, Nsibirwa died. (assassinated)
6. 1946, M. Kawalya- Kagwa became the new Katikiro.
7. 1946, New confusion in Buganda.
8. 1946, election were organized that led to 31 Baganda chosen as representatives.
9. 1949, New Volcano (uprising) and the blame was put on to the Bataka.
10. 1949, the British demanded that some chiefs be removed from the council.
11. 1949, after the riots, its leaders were arrested; the Bataka Party and African Union came to an end.
12. 1950, 8 Africans were among those of other provinces.
13. 1953, the Africans on the Legislative council increased to fourteen (14).
14. 1955, the Kabaka was deposed.
15. By 1961, there were 2 outstanding parties in Uganda, that is to say D.P led by Benedicto Kiwanuka and UPC led by Dr. Milton Obote.
16. 9th October 1962, Uganda achieved independence.

**KENYA**

1. 1920, The Kikuyu Association was formed to defend African land from Europeans.
2. 1921, other political parties came into existence like the Young Kikuyu Association, the young Kavirondo association in Nyanza, etc.
3. 1925, the Kikuyu Central Association asked the Hilton Young Commission to consider appointment of Africans to the Legislative Council.
4. 1929, the famous conflict between the members of the Church Missionary Society and the Kikuyu Association erupted.
5. 1930 The Native Land Trust Ordinance was passed to solve Land problems for Africans.
6. 1934 North Kavirondo Central Association was formed following the threat brought about by the discovery of Gold at Kakamega.
7. 1938, Saw the formation of the Kikuyu Provincial Association Thuku followed by the Kamba Members Association.
8. 1939 The Kikuyu Central association and the Labour trade union staged a strike at Mombasa.
9. 1946, the Kenya African Union was formed by Eliad Mathu with James Gichuru as its chairman. But when Kenyatta returned from England, he became the chairman of the party.
10. 1948 the Kenya Land and Freedom Army was formed. It was later refereed to as the Mau-Mau.
11. 1952 The MAU-MAU Rebellion was in full gear.
12. 1954, the governor began to take drastic measures to help the situation. 26000 Kikuyu were arrested in Nairobi because they could not state why they had come to Nairobi.
13. 1955, The Mau-Mau leader, General China was captured in the regions of Mt. Kenya.
14. 1960, Two new political parties were born that is KANU and KADU.
15. 1961 Kenyatta was released from prison and two months later he became the president of KANU.
16. 1962 Kenyatta became a member of the legislative council and tried to bring KANU and KADU together but failed because whereas KANU advocated a centralized system of government, KADU wanted Regionalism.
17. 1963, Kenya became independent and Kenyatta became the Prime Minister.

REFERNCES USED.

Akena Adoko. From Obote to Obote, Vikas Publishing House PVT Ltd, Delhi, 1983

Ibingira G.S. The Forging of an African nation, Viking Press, New York 1973

Kabwengere Tarsis. The Politics of State Formation and Destruction, Fountain Publishers-Kampala 1995

Allende Salvador, History belongs to us: Speeches and Articles 1970-1973, Moscow 1974.

Wilson ET TAL Were, East Africa through a thousand years…………………………………..